

**GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
MINISTRY OF TOURISM AND CULTURE  
DEPARTMENT OF TOURISM  
MARKET RESEARCH DIVISION**



**20 YEARS PERSPECTIVE PLAN  
FOR  
THE SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM  
IN THE STATE OF NAGALAND**

**(January 2003)**

**CONSULTANTS**

**‘THE DESIGNERS’**

**‘BRINDAVAN’, 227, RAJ MAHAL VILAS EXTN. II  
FIRST MAIN ROAD**

**BANGALORE, KARNATAKA – 560 094**

**PHONE: 080 – 3417366, TELEFAX: 080 – 3417283**

**E-MAIL: < the\_designers@vsnl.net >, < ulhasrane@vsnl.net >**

# CONTENTS

	Page No.
List of figures	4
List of tables	5
Acknowledgements	6
Prologue	7
Executive Summary	9
Perspective Plan	31
1. Introduction	31
1.1. Background of Tourism Development	
1.2. Global Tourism Trends	
1.3. Tourism Policy in India	
1.4. Objectives of Tourism Development in India	
1.5. Environmental and Ecological Parameters	
1.6. Tourism Development in the Northeast	
1.7. Tourism Development in Nagaland	
1.8. Objectives of the Study	
1.9. Methodology	
2. Nagaland	41
2.1 Introduction	
2.2 Geography	
2.3 People and Culture	
2.4 Natural Environment and Ecology	
2.5 Socio-economics	
2.6 Evolution	
3. Tourism in Nagaland	52
3.1 Tourism Status	
3.2 Tourism Potential	
3.3 People's outlook towards Tourism	
3.4 Government's outlook towards Tourism	
3.5 Present Budget and Economics of Tourism Development	
3.6 Sustainability	

4. <b>Basic Tourism infrastructure in Nagaland</b>	57
4.1 Communication Network	
4.2 Telecommunication Network	
4.3 Information Technology	
4.4 Tourism Department	
4.5 Network of Information Centres	
4.6 Accommodation Facilities	
4.7 Restaurants	
4.8 Basic Services	
5. <b>Positive and Negative Factors</b>	63
5.1 Northeast Region	
5.2 Nagaland State	
6. <b>Proposed Tourism Policy</b>	65
6.1 General Recommendations for the Northeast Region	
6.2 General Recommendations for Nagaland State	
6.3 General Recommendations for the Existing / Proposed Projects	
6.4 Specific Unique Projects for Nagaland	
6.5 Specific Unique Tourism Circuits for Nagaland	
7. <b>Tourism Trends and Implications</b>	106
7.1 Tourism Research and Documentation	
7.2 Past & Existing Tourism Trends	
7.3 Future Tourism Implications	
7.4 Evaluation & Future of Tourism	
8. <b>Financial Implications and Funding Avenues</b>	111
8.1 Financial Implications	
8.2 Privatisation Strategy	
8.3 Governmental Funding Avenues	
8.4 Institutional Funding Avenues	
9. <b>Tourism Economics, Cost - Benefit Analysis &amp; Employment Generation</b>	124
9.1 Tourism Economics	
9.2 Role of Tourism in National Socio-economic Development	
9.3 Present Economics of Nagaland Tourism	
9.4 Future Economics of Nagaland Tourism	
9.5 Cost – Benefit Analysis – Tourism in Nagaland	
9.6 Employment Generation from Tourism Development in Nagaland	
10. <b>Community Participation &amp; Women’s Role</b>	139
11. <b>Proposed Strategy &amp; Action Plan</b>	142

12. Proposed Phased Development	145
13. Block Estimate & Feasibility	148
14. Conclusion	151
Appendices	153
a. Guidelines for preparation of Perspective Plan	154
b. Questionnaire	157
c. Format for interviews	162
d. General information	168
e. State Tourism Budget (1993-94 to 2002-2003)	170
f. Revenue Collection (1985-86 to 2000-2001)	171
g. Tourist accommodation provided by Dept. of Tourism, Nagaland	172
h. Private tourist facilities in Kohima	173
i. Status of existing facilities	174
j. Details of Centrally Sponsored Schemes	181
k. District wise Forest Cover	191
l. Area under different Land Use	194
m. Status of Nagaland Forests	196
n. Norms under National River Conservation Directorate (MoEF)	198
o. General Guidelines for the Up-gradation of existing infrastructure	205
p. General Guidelines for the Development of new infrastructure	211
q. List of Voluntary Organisations in Nagaland	215
r. List of Eminent Personalities in Nagaland	216
s. Checklist for Transport Facilities	217
t. Environment Impact Questions	226
u. Assessment of Barrier-free infrastructure	234
v. International Tourist Arrivals – World wise	243
w. International Tourist Receipts – World wise	244
x. Domestic & Foreign visits to India – Region wise	245
y. Distribution of approved hotels in Northeast India	246
z. Sources of Information	248
aa. National Wildlife Action Plan on Tourism	249
bb. Central Govt. Ministries for Tourism Development collaboration	250
cc. Institutional Funding Agencies for Tourism Development	252
References	254
Map of Northeast India	

## LIST OF FIGURES

	Page No.
1. Map of NE region	37
2. Map of Nagaland	43
3. Evolving Nagas	50
4. Tourist Lodge, Kohima	59
5. Tuophema Resort, the villagers' initiative	62
6. Mt. Saramati	86
7. Dzukou Valley	91
8. Kohima Cityscapes	98
9. The Ruins of Kachari Kingdom, Dimapur	101
10. Naga Tribes in Festive Moods	103
11. Village Gate	105
12. Naga Woman	141
13. Naga Symbolism	151

## LIST OF TABLES

	Page No.
1. World Tourism – Region wise distribution	32
2. World Top Tourism Earners	33
3. Domestic & Foreign Tourist visiting NE & Nagaland	52
4. Budget Allocation for Tourism – Govt. of Nagaland	54
5. Projects sanctioned by Dept. of Tourism, GOI	55
6. Special Budget Allocation for NE, GOI	55
7. Trends & Projections of tourist arrivals at various destinations	107
8. Existing status & Projected needs of accommodation	108
9. General Evaluation of Tourism destinations	110
10. State Govt.'s outlay (general) for 10 <sup>th</sup> five year plan	111
11. State Budget (1993-2003)	127
12. Average per capita per Day Tourist Enditure	134
13. Direct Economic Benefits	135
14. Indirect Economic Benefits	136
15. Cost Benefit Analysis	137
16. Generation of Direct Employment	138
17. Block Estimate	148

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

1. Staff of the Department of Tourism (MR), Govt. of India
2. Staff of the Department of Tourism, Nagaland
3. Various interviewees
4. Various respondents to the questionnaire
5. Various tourists, tour organisers, travel agents
6. Staff of various libraries
7. Consultants & staff of 'The Designers'
8. Various government officials, State of Nagaland
9. People of Nagaland

## PROLOGUE

Northeast region has been a fascination for us since our earlier encounters with the Sikkim Himalayas and the great Brahmaputra of Assam, during the last two decades. Our professional projects in these regions gave us opportunities to explore this region of wonderful natural beauty, unique treasure of diverse flora and fauna and ethnic culture of very warm people.

However visiting Nagaland, Mizoram and Tripura under the assignment of the Department of Tourism, Govt. of India, opened up unimaginable insights for us. It gave us an opportunity to understand the Northeast more closely. Each state has its own charm and its unique identity of varied landscapes and people. We were able to feel and understand innumerable problems of the people otherwise hidden behind their ever-smiling faces.

The explorations in Nagaland have been a delightful experience. This is the charming land of rugged mountains, deep valleys, and beautifully sculpted terraced fields. The land is inhabited by several tribes of warrior clan. The entire region is filled with mystic folk tales. During the festivals, sounds of music and dance with the rhythmic drumbeats resonate the valleys. The depressing sights of degradation due to jhoom cultivation and the graveyard like look of the forest habitat bring in dejection. On the other hand, enthusiasm of some village councils in creating community sanctuaries and protected wildlife reserves create some hope.

The Dzukou valley and the Mount Japfu and Saramati exposed us to extremely beautiful natural environment, whereas Khonoma and Dzuleke villages provided us the warmth of the warrior people. Nagaland has some unique heritage sites like the ruins of the Kachari Kingdom of megalithic culture near Dimapur, Kohima village within the limits of the capital city of Kohima and the world famous Kohima War Cemetery commemorating the soldiers who sacrificed their life here in the World War II.

Nagaland is a land of surprises and stunning natural beauty. It will keep us attracting again and again. The tourism officials and local people were cooperative and helpful in spite of many odds.

**We dedicate this study report to the PEOPLE OF NAGALAND.**

We are extremely grateful to the Department of Tourism, Government of India for giving us this invaluable opportunity to understand the Northeast. We faced a lot of hurdles during this endeavour. The short time frame coincided with the torrential monsoon. The communication was difficult. Adverse climate, landslides, frequent cancellations of flights etc. regularly disrupted our travel plans. Accessibility to the remote regions was almost impossible.

In spite of these obstacles, we have tried our best efforts to evolve a strategy for the sustainable tourism development in the region. We are hopeful that these efforts would attract more tourists to the Northeast to bring in socio-economic revolution in the region in the coming years.

We strongly feel that entire country must contribute intellectually, politically and financially for the total rejuvenation of this neglected region.

**ULHAS RANE**  
PRINCIPAL INVESTIGATOR

# **EXECUTIVE SUMMARY**

## **20 YEARS PERSPECTIVE PLAN FOR THE SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM IN THE STATE OF NAGALAND**

### **1. INTRODUCTION:**

Tourism has become one of the most flourishing industries in the world. Today, it is the second largest and fastest growing industry, next only to the petroleum industry. Worldwide, tourism is emerging as one of the biggest employers compared to any other economic sector. It offers opportunities for economic, cultural and political exchanges, generates employment, foreign exchange and raises living standards. It facilitates social integration and international understanding.

The vast potential and the need for rapid development was recognised only in the Seventh Plan, subsequent to which tourism was accorded the status of an Industry, thereby encouraging private investments in this sector.

The national action plan for tourism (1992), defines the objectives of tourism development in India and the primary strategy for its development:

- a. It is a unifying and a nation-building force, through fostering greater national and international understanding, particularly amongst the youth of the country.
- b. It serves to preserve and enrich India's cultural heritage.
- c. It brings socio-economic benefits.

The strategy for achieving these objectives has been outlined as:

- a. Improvement of tourist infrastructure
- b. Developing areas on a selective basis for integrated growth, along with the marketing of destinations on the basis of a 'Special Tourism Area' concept.
- c. Restructuring and strengthening of institutions for development of human resources.
- d. Evolving a suitable policy for increasing foreign tourist arrivals and foreign exchange earnings.

**Environmental Parameters:** Any development has to consider its possible adverse impacts on the surrounding environment and the conservation of various ecological elements must be considered as a priority obligation. Tourism development projects generally tend to be within ecologically sensitive regions such as hills, seashores, lakes, rivers, national parks/sanctuaries, and heritage sites. Insensitive and haphazard planning for tourism development can ruin these regions of natural heritage. The tourism development plan for a region must carry out environmental impact assessment and work out sustainable management strategies.

In the case of Nagaland, which lies in the ecologically sensitive region of the northeast India, the priority consideration for tourism development should be environmental and ecological conservation. The region also has very rich ethnic tribal culture and the whole tourism development plan should be sensitive to all the heritage parameters.

Considering the unique and environmentally fragile region of northeast India in general, and Nagaland in particular, it is almost imperative that the tourism planning of the region should evolve around the concept of Eco-tourism.

**Tourism development in Northeast India & Nagaland:** It is unfortunate that due to socio-political and geographical reasons, the entire Northeast has remained neglected and backward from the development point of view. In spite of very high literacy rate in the region (around 80%), progress and benefits have not reached the Northeast even today. The concept of Tourism development is very recent in this region and is in its infancy. A few states like Sikkim and Assam have taken a few strides in developing tourism, with emphasis on eco-tourism, wildlife tourism, cultural tourism and adventure tourism. The other states have also commenced their efforts during the last decade.

However, the tourism development of the Northeast region needs to be targeted via a regional approach rather than an individual state approach. The basic needs for tourism development of the region are efficient infrastructure, good connectivity between the states and peace in the region. The entry permit formality required for a few states for both domestic and international tourists is a major deterrent to the region's tourism attractiveness.

**Objectives of the Study:** The Department of Tourism, Govt. of India commissioned this study in order to prepare a 20-year perspective plan for the sustainable development of tourism in various Indian states with the following major objectives:

1. Prepare a 20-year perspective plan for developing sustainable tourism in the state, providing a phased programme while considering the available resources
2. Indicate short-term and long-term plans, targets and ground realities
3. Indicate all activities to be undertaken by different agencies with a definite time frame to achieve these activities

4. Assess the existing tourism scenario in the state with respect to natural resources, heritage and other socio-cultural assets, quantitative and demographic factors such as population, employment, occupation, income levels, services and infrastructure.

## 2. **TOURISM IN NAGALAND:**

Nagaland is a land of transition; a satisfying compromise between the old order and the new; a fusion of styles and cultures of the hill tribes. In 1866 the Naga Hills district was formed under the Bengal Presidency under the British Rule. Later on it continued to be a district in Assam. In 1957 a new administrative unit was formed in Assam named as Naga Hill Tuensang Area. On the 1<sup>st</sup> December 1963 Nagaland was inaugurated as the 16<sup>th</sup> state of India, with its capital at Kohima. The state is bounded by Assam in the west, Myanmar on the east, Arunachal Pradesh and parts of Assam on the north and Manipur in the south. The state consists of eight administrative districts, inhabited by 16 major tribes along with other sub-tribes.

The young state of Nagaland is economically weak and entirely depends on its agriculture. Inefficient infrastructure and poor connectivity are the major deterrents for the tourists. The entry permit formality for both domestic and international tourists is another hurdle for tourists. However, the State Department of Tourism is trying to develop tourist facilities at various places. The state has excellent potential for tourism development with emphasis on Eco-tourism/Adventure tourism and Heritage Tourism. However the success of its tourism highly depends on the enthusiasm and inputs from the state government and also on infrastructure development of the entire Northeast region.

Nagaland basically has an agricultural economy. Over 70% of the population is dependent on agriculture. Jhoom cultivation and terrace cultivation are the two modes of agriculture. Although jhoom cultivation may have been sustainable in the past with sufficient fallow periods between jhoom cycles, the present demands on the land owing to population increases have resulted in short fallow periods causing much land degradation. The State Government is attempting to persuade people to shift from jhoom to terrace cultivation, and also to restore lands that have been degraded by jhooming, by the adoption of tree farming particularly of economic trees such as fruit trees etc. A major initiative has been initiated called the NEPED project: Nagaland Empowerment of People through Economic Development.

Though Nagaland is a small State, it has been endowed with a wide variety of forest types on account of its unique geographic location and a wide range of physiographic terrains available in the State.

- Northern Tropical Wet Evergreen Forests
- Northern Tropical Semi-evergreen Forests
- Northern Sub-tropical Broad Leaved Wet Hill Forests
- Northern Sub-tropical Pine Forests

- Northern Montane Wet temperate Forests
- Temperate Forests

The forest in the state exhibit distinct gradients depending on the altitude, physiography, rainfall and the intensity of biotic interference which singly or in combination with other factors creates a striking variety of ecological situations.

Nagaland has protected areas as under:

- Intangki National Park, Kohima district: 202.02 Sq. Kms.
- Rangapahar Wildlife Sanctuary, Dimapur district: 4.70 Sq. Kms.
- Fakim Wildlife Sanctuary, Tuensang district: 6.42 Sq. Kms.
- Puliebadze Wildlife Sanctuary, Kohima district: 9.23 Sq. Kms.

However, for a state like Nagaland, which is blessed with natural resources, any attempt of socio-economic development has to be considered with utmost concern for the natural environment. And considering this factor alone agriculture and tourism could be the best alternatives for the bright future of Nagaland.

The status of tourism is reflected in the following statistical data of tourist visits in the northeast and Nagaland:

**ESTIMATED DOMESTIC & FOREIGN TOURIST VISITS  
(1998 –2000)**

Location	1998		1999		2000		Prop. to the total (%)	
	Dom.	For.	Dom.	For.	Dom.	For.	Dom.	For.
Northeast Region (7states except Sikkim)	529784	2909	567284	3570	1489112	11788	0.7	0.2
Nagaland	28890	116	21041	119	13272	451	0.0	0.0

Nagaland has tremendous and quite unique tourism potential. This could be tapped mainly through the concept of eco-tourism. Nature / wildlife tourism, adventure tourism, cultural / heritage tourism, leisure tourism, international border tourism could be some special tourist packages.

Tourism was a late starter in Nagaland. Tourism had a subordinate status prior to 1981 in Nagaland when it was a part of the Department of Information and Public Relations. Since 1981, the Department of Tourism has been looking after the activities of tourism development in the state. However, insurgency and turbulent socio-political situation in the state for over two decades adversely affected any efforts of the department resulting in negligible tourism in the state. The state government has realised the importance of tourism

development as a support to cultural and socio-economic development of the state. Under the State Industrial Policy of Nagaland – 2000, Tourism has been accorded the status of ‘Priority Sector’. Tourism activities have been made eligible for all benefits and subsidies to the industry. Financial assistance for private tourism projects is being organised through various finance corporations. The efforts for privatisation of government infrastructure are also going on. However there have been no responses till now.

The Department of Tourism, Govt. of India, under the ministry of Tourism and Culture has been providing liberal financial and technical support for the tourism development in the state based on the projects received from the states.

In the present scenario, the state government’s outlook towards tourism development is of total dependence on central assistance. Considering the external adverse factors of complex nature, which are beyond the control of the state government, it is unlikely that the tourism development in the state can be self-sustaining in the near future.

**However looking at the bright tourism potential, enthusiasm of the central government, possible initiative from the state government and the expected rise in tourist arrivals and receipts, it looks quite possible to make tourism in the state sustainable in two decades. It will require futuristic vision, conscious and planned efforts at all levels and a disciplined action plan and implementation strategy. In the meanwhile, sympathetic approach of the central government will be required to stabilise the socio-political situation in the northeast followed by overall infrastructure development in the region.**

### **3. POSITIVE & NEGATIVE FACTORS:**

**NORTHEAST REGION** (8 states – Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura, Mizoram, Manipur & Nagaland):

General **Negative** Factors of NE Region:

Insurgency, Isolated/Neglected & Backward region, Difficult / rugged terrain, Intermittently adverse climatic conditions, particularly in monsoon, Earthquake prone region, Inappropriate Time Zone, Poor communication infrastructure / connectivity to mainland and also within the NE states, Poor development infrastructure: power, roads, industry, transportation, Lack of higher / Professional education & research facilities, Jhoom cultivation causing degradation of natural resources, Lack of exposure to the outside world, Lack of professionalism in attitude and management, Lack of discipline, Lack of emergency medical facilities, Loss of ethnic culture especially in the hilly region

### General **Positive** Factors of NE Region:

Wonderful Natural Beauty of Mountains and Rivers, Unique and endemic flora and fauna, large percentage of land under forest cover, Low population density, Clean and unpolluted Environment, Closeness to five international boundaries – Nepal, Bhutan, China, Myanmar, Bangladesh, Peaceful cultural relationship with international communities of Myanmar and Bangladesh, Diversity of very charming ethnic cultures, Diversity of folk art forms particularly music and dances, Peaceful intermingling of diverse communities, faiths and cultures, Hospitality and warmth of people, Mysticism of the region creating awe and curiosity, Great potential for Eco-tourism and Adventure tourism, Unexplored region for tourism development

### **NAGALAND STATE:**

#### General **Negative** Factors of Nagaland:

Degradation of forests / wildlife, Fear of insurgency, Entry formalities i.e. ILP / RAP, Poor Connectivity to the other northeast states and mainland, Poor infrastructure of road / rail / air, Loss of ethnic culture in urban areas, Poor Water and Power supply, Fuel problem, Poor public transport system, Health Hazard – mosquitoes, excessive smoking and chewing of Pan/tobacco/gutkha etc., Fear of Drug-trafficking, Over population/concentration in Dimapur and Kohima cities, Limitation in availability of decent vegetarian food, on availability of any facilities in the late evenings and on Sundays

#### General **Positive** Factors of Nagaland:

The land of wonderful scenic natural beauty, Exciting topography of hill ranges and deep valleys, Pleasant and moderate climate throughout the year, Unique geographical location within the transition zone of tropical and temperate ecosystems, Unique flora and fauna, Ethnic tribal traditions, rituals, dances etc. creating curiosity for outsiders, Closeness to the international boundary of Myanmar, Unique terrace agriculture, Innovative NEPED project, High literacy rate, Warm, hospitable, sociable, happy and self-reliant people, Strong philosophy of democratic and participatory approach, Unique hill architecture, Low crime rate, Beggar free ambience even in the urban areas, Clean and pollution free environment, Organic agriculture and horticulture, Fast changing society with a mix of modernity and tradition

## **4. TOURISM POLICY FOR NAGALAND**

The broad approach for the tourism development in the Northeast should be regional (incorporating Indian states and neighbouring countries) rather than local. Individual states in the Northeast do have their own specific identity, which should reflect in their detailed local proposals.

The Tourism Development in the Northeast region will depend on integrated approach, involving various government departments, private entrepreneurs, voluntary organisations and local community. This approach will also help in evolving local people's perception towards tourism development as a strong tool for socio-economic upliftment, with self-dependence and without environmental destruction of the region.

The Tourism Policy for the entire Northeast Region should be based on the concept of Eco-tourism with very wide parameters. The eco-tourism should not just mean nature tourism, but also should consider environmental / heritage conservation and education as a core feature.

The strategy is four fold:

- a. Regional (NE) infrastructure development
- b. General infrastructure development in the state
- c. Development of existing / proposed tourism projects
- d. Development of new unique and specific Tourism Projects and Tourism Circuits

We recommend the strategy of stabilisation for the next five years. That will include:

- Complete all incomplete / under construction works of the approved projects
- Obtain approval for the projects in the pipeline awaiting sanction from the Department of Tourism, New Delhi; commence and complete those works as soon as possible
- Do not apply for any more new, infrastructure projects
- Carry out total up-gradation of the entire infrastructure to bring it to excellent standards
- All efforts should be concentrated to identify and develop new and unique tourist spots and tourist circuits with very minimum basic amenities
- Simultaneously, additional efforts should be focussed on effective publicity and marketing through innovative and professional approach

#### SPECIFIC UNIQUE TOURISM PROJECTS FOR NAGALAND:

- Phokhungri / Zungki & Chindwin Rivers / Shilloi Lake (Myanmar border) Region, International Collaborative Project
- Mt. Saramati International Biosphere Reserve (including Fakim Wildlife Sanctuary) and a Centre for Ecology, Adventure & Culture, at Thanamir/Fakim in SouthTuensang district on Myanmar border, an Eco-tourism Project
- Eco-tourism, Wildlife & Adventure Tourism Projects

- Cultural Tourism through integration at the International / Interstate Tri-Junctions
- Agriculture/ Handicraft Centres
- Handicraft Centre in Mon – Tuensang region / Dimapur
- Defence Tourism & World War II Trail / Circuit
- Water Tourism
- Rural Tourism
- Urban Tourism
- Regional Nature Parks: Ecological Park at Mount Tiyi in Wokha District, Botanical Park / Orchid Sanctuary at Kohima
- Heritage Tourism: The Ruins of Medieval Kachari Kingdom, Dimapur, The War Cemetery, Kohima, Kohima Village, Kohima, Khonoma Village, Kohima district, Historical site at Naganimora, Mon district, Molung, Mokokchung district: 1<sup>st</sup> Baptist Mission in Nagaland & Impur –Mission Centre
- Heritage Complex at Kisama near Kohima
- Tourism Festivals: Christmas & New Year, Festivals in collaboration with Star Hotels, Traditional Tribal Festivals

#### SPECIFIC UNIQUE TOURISM CIRCUITS FOR NAGALAND:

Tourism Circuits is a very popular concept in the tourism sector today. The development of such circuits and organising tours on these circuits becomes economical for both tourists and tourism departments.

- **Heritage circuit:** (Khonoma, Molung, Naginmora, Ethnic Villages under Rural Tourism, Handicraft Centre)
- **Wildlife circuit:** (All sanctuaries, National Park & Biosphere Reserve)
- **International Border Circuit:** (Myanmar border circuit)
- **Interstate Circuit:** (Nagaland – Manipur via Dzukou Valley, Nagaland – Assam via Doyang, Merapani, Longnak, Nagaland – Arunachal Pradesh via Longwa, Namtola circuits)
- **River Tourism Circuit:** (Perennial Rivers – Doyang, Dikhu, Zungki)
- **Defence Circuit:** World War II Trail / Circuit – Myanmar to Manipur, Kohima and some parts of Assam

## 5. TOURISM ECONOMICS IN NAGALAND:

The general indication of past trends and future projections for 20 years is as under:

### Trends & Projections of Tourist Arrivals at the major Tourist Destinations:

Destination	Past Trends			Future Projections (Annual-average)			
	1998	1999	2000	2002-2006	2007-2011	2012-2016	2017-2021
Phokhungri/Shilloi Lake Region, Int. Coll. Project				100	150	200	300
Mt. Saramati Int. Biosphere Reserve			100	100	200	300	500
Intangki National Park			100	100	150	200	<b>300</b>
Dzukou Valley			2000	2000	2500	3500	5000
International Tri-junctions				100	150	200	<b>300</b>
Interstate Tri-junctions				100	100	150	200
Agriculture/Handicraft Centre at Zunheboto			500	500	800	1000	2000
Defence Tourism					100	200	300
Rural Tourism			500	500	800	1000	2000
Water Tourism					100	200	300
Urban Tourism-Kohima, Dimapur			8000	8000	9000	12000	20000
Regional Parks at Wokha/Kohima			500	500	800	1000	1500
Heritage Tourism/Circuit			500	500	800	1000	1500
Wildlife Circuit				500	800	1000	2000
International Border Circuit					100	150	200
River Tourism Circuit				100	150	200	300
<b>TOTAL FOR NAGALAND</b>	<b>29006</b>	<b>21160</b>	<b>13723</b>	<b>12000-15000</b>	<b>16000-21000</b>	<b>22000-30000</b>	<b>33000-45000</b>

**Note:** The details of the past trends at various destinations are not available from the Nagaland Tourism. The numbers here are the total of domestic & foreign tourists, foreigners being approx. less than 0.5 % of the total tourists. The percentage of foreign tourists could increase only with very special efforts. The past trends show general decline of 28 %. This rate may gradually stabilise during the first five years, after which it may increase slowly to 5 % during the next 10 years and subsequently to 10 % over the next 5 years. Since the destination wise details of past trends are not available, assumptions are made for the availability of rooms/beds and 40% occupancy.

It is our assessment that the present and ongoing projects should provide these minimum facilities to give preliminary impetus for tourism attraction in Nagaland. The development of innovative tourism destinations combined with appropriate marketing and publicity strategy should attract steady tourist inflow to Nagaland.

## General Evaluation of Tourist Destinations in Nagaland:

(Note: The evaluation is graded on 1 to 10 scale from poor – fair – best, based on the existing status)

Destination	Attractions	Popularity	Infrastructure	Volume of Traffic Flow	Overall Average
Phokhungri/Shilloi Lake Region, Int. Coll. Project	8	6	4	3	<b>5.25</b>
Mt. Saramati Int. Biosphere Reserve	8	6	4	3	<b>5.25</b>
Intangki National Park	6	6	3	3	<b>6.00</b>
Dzukou Valley	8	8	5	5	<b>6.50</b>
International Tri-junctions	8	6	4	4	<b>5.50</b>
Interstate Tri-junctions	6	6	4	3	<b>4.75</b>
Agriculture/Handicraft Centre at Zunheboto	8	6	5	5	<b>6.00</b>
Defence Tourism	8	8	4	4	<b>6.00</b>
Rural Tourism	8	6	4	4	<b>5.50</b>
Water Tourism	6	5	3	2	<b>4.00</b>
Urban Tourism-Kohima, Dimapur	8	8	7	6	<b>7.25</b>
Regional Parks at Wokha/Kohima	8	8	6	5	<b>6.75</b>
Heritage Tourism/Circuit	5	5	3	3	<b>4.00</b>
Wildlife Circuit	8	6	4	3	<b>5.25</b>
International Border Circuit	8	6	4	4	<b>5.50</b>
River Tourism Circuit	6	5	4	3	<b>4.50</b>
<b>Overall Average for Nagaland</b>	<b>7.31</b>	<b>6.31</b>	<b>4.25</b>	<b>3.75</b>	<b>5.41</b>

We feel that future picture is quite optimistic. Even considering the limitations of the last two parameters (due to the existing status), the average rating worked out for all major destinations varies between 4.00 and 7.25, whereas overall average for Nagaland works out approx. 5.41 (i.e. Fair).

This provides us confidence to state that once the recommendations of the perspective plan are implemented, the future of Nagaland Tourism will be bright.

**The details of the State Government's Proposed Outlay (Category wise) for the 10<sup>th</sup> Five-Year Plan for Tourism are not available at present.**

- **Privatisation Strategy:**

The role of the Tourism Department should be to develop the tourism potential in the state by creating infrastructure and developing tourist spots. It should get out of the implementation process as early as possible. The privatisation of various facilities with different strategies makes the projects sustainable in the long run. However, in the present nascent stage, it may not be possible for the department to attract private entrepreneurs who could take risk and invest funds since the tourism market is unpredictable. The Tourism Department will have to prepare its own strategy of sustainability through economic / participatory / collaborative projects for the next ten years. At the same time efforts must be continued to involve the private participation in the creation of infrastructure, through attractive incentives and benefits. A few popular tourist spots could be offered on a BOT basis as an experiment.

- **Action Plan for Privatisation:**

- a) Fiscal evaluation of the existing infrastructure on a realistic / business-like manner, according to various categories.
- b) Auction / offer Tourist Lodges to private entrepreneurs / authentic NGOs/ reputed charitable institutions on an appropriate terms and conditions.
- c) Offer restaurants to reputed charitable institutions, particularly Women's Organisations for management on lucrative terms and conditions
- d) Offer service oriented infrastructure like booking counters, information booths, STD booths etc. to the deprived sector (educated unemployed, handicapped, women, students etc) in an individual / organisational capacity. This offer could be charitable / subsidised.
- e) Offer incentives to the existing staff to form co-operatives to run / manage existing Tourist Lodges, Restaurants etc. on reasonable terms and conditions.
- f) Offer new infrastructure development to Village Councils, NGOs, private entrepreneurs etc. on a turnkey basis (BOT i.e. built, operate, transfer), if necessary, even on long-term basis.
- g) Offer development of smaller infrastructure like wayside amenities, public toilets, tourist transport etc. to existing local entrepreneurs on lucrative terms and conditions.
- h) Offer financial incentives like interest free loans, soft loans, tax concessions, low lease rent etc. to encourage private participation in the tourism industry
- i) Offer remote area concessions and incentives to private entrepreneurs for the development of tourism destinations and infrastructure in remote regions. These could include free land, partial subsidy for development etc.
- j) Give wide publicity to the schemes being offered for privatisation. Keep the terms of offer lucrative like low/refundable deposits, quick decisions on proposals etc.

- k) Protect long-term government interest by legally safeguarding the terms of offers and agreements. The terms should also ensure long-term maintenance of infrastructure and quality service.
- l) The Department should work out effective strategy to regularly monitor the privatised properties and ensure the quality of service.

- **Governmental Funding Avenues:**

The Tourism Department must try various funding avenues in the process towards making activities economically feasible and sustainable. The state / central governments may provide limited assistance for the initial gestation period. However, a definite strategy has to be worked out for the long-term maintenance of such facilities. Other funding avenues should be tapped. Various government departments and organisations provide specialised funding for specific projects related to their activities and tourism sector being a versatile sector could tap these resources.

- **Institutional Funding Avenues:**

There are many national and international organisations / universities which are interested in long term ecological research and appropriate development in the regions like Northeast. The tourist infrastructure could be also used for such complementary activities and made sustainable. The Institutional Funding Agencies may be classified under the following categories:

**National Non-Governmental Organisations (NGOs)**

**International NGOs**

**International Government Agencies**

**Inter Governmental Organisations (IGOs)**

- **Modalities of Funding:**

The above-mentioned funding agencies have their own norms and modalities for funding. Most of them have their own specific interests in the areas to provide funding e.g. environment, forests, water, infrastructure, heritage, education, tourism, rural development, women's empowerment etc. Generally all funding agencies have their own formats of application for the funding. They also have time frames and schedules. Most of the funding agencies prefer to collaborate with the Government Departments, however they also like to involve NGOs and also look for people's participation. International Funding Applications need to be routed through the Ministry of External Affairs and also the Central Government Ministries related to the Projects.

The international funding agencies have different approaches. Some provide funding in a form of Grant and also technical know-how / human resources etc. These are collaborative projects, bilateral or multilateral. The ODA and European Union provide funding in this manner. These are generally long term projects (5 to 10 years) and the funding agencies regularly monitor the

progress of the project through their own consultants / specialised institutions. These agencies generally provide 100% funding on the cost estimates worked out jointly, however they ensure the commitment of the grantee to look after, maintain and continue the project in future. The agreements / MOUs ensure these clauses for the commitment. These agencies also ensure the participation of the grantee in the form of existing infrastructure including human resources, land etc. at the beginning of the project.

The Nagaland Tourism could attempt to get such funding for following specific projects:

1. Phokhungri / Shilloi Lake Region International Collaborative, Eco-Tourism, Heritage and Cultural Integration Project
2. Handicraft Centre at Mon-Tuensang / Dimapur
3. Agriculture Centres as Rural Development & Women's Empowerment Project
4. Cultural Tourism Centres at International / National tri-junctions as Cultural Integration Project
5. Mt. Saramati International Biosphere Reserve
6. Dzukou Valley and Bird Sanctuaries at Changtonya, Ghoshu as Adventure and Eco-Tourism Project

There are other funding agencies, which are basically financial institutions like Asian Development Bank (ADB), Overseas Economic Corporate Fund (OECF), now JBIC, International Monetary fund (IMF) etc. These agencies provide soft loans for mostly development projects. They have their own parameters to decide about the eligibility components. Such funding is generally provided to the Government Departments and there are standard norms of sureties for repayments etc. They also insist for proportionate investment / participation from the recipient. For example, the JBIC provides financial assistance in a form of soft loan up to maximum 85% of the total project costs. The eligible components for JBIC are Land Cost, Infrastructure Development Cost, Compensation / Rehabilitation cost, Duties & Taxes, Interest during the implementation of the project etc. These loans are provided to the State Government Departments on the approval of the Ministry of External Affairs. Most of the times, 30% of the approved amount as provided as Grant and 70% as Loan. This type of funding is very useful for tourism development projects, wherein the State Governments do not have financial resources to develop the basic tourism infrastructure and at the same time, once such an infrastructure is created they can start generating revenue on a regular basis. However, the state government will need to provide the seed money to the extent of 15% of the project cost

The Nagaland Tourism could attempt to get such funding for following specific projects:

1. Urban Tourism i.e. development of Kohima and Dimapur
2. Regional Parks at Wokha and Kohima
3. Development of Tourism Infrastructure i.e. roads & services at the tourist destinations, signage etc.
4. Computerisation of tourism services, Publicity infrastructure, Capacity Building etc.
5. Cultural Centres in other parts of the country

- **Tourism Economics:**

In 2001, T & T in India will generate Rs. 1,564 billion in economic activity (total demand), making India the 22<sup>nd</sup> largest tourism market in the world. The contribution of the T & T Economy to GDP is impressive in dollar terms. The potential contribution of tourism to India's GDP as seen today is at 5.3% as compared to the world average of 10.7%, and India ranks 140th in the world when tourism's contribution to GDP is measured.

In terms of employment, India's T & T Economy accounts for 25 million jobs (World Rank 2). This translates to a share of 6% of all employment, giving India a rank of 140. The Department of Tourism's estimates of T & T Industry jobs are 4.2 million. Similarly, despite employment of 12.3 million and a world rank of 2, the T & T Industry in India contributes 2.9% of total employment as compared to a world average of 3.1% and ranks 111th in terms of percentage contribution to total employment.

Tourism can play an important, pioneering and effective role in achieving the growth targets set out for the nation. The primary objective of tourism development in India is to accelerate economic growth significantly, so as to meet a series of socio-economic imperative that are unique to India.

## 6. BLOCK ESTIMATE & FEASIBILITY

The Block Estimate is worked out to give overall idea of the financial involvement of this Perspective Plan. The estimate does not include recurring costs.

S.No.	Item	Approx. Qty.	Rate	Amount (In Lakhs)
<b>I</b>	<b>BASIC INFRASTRUCTURE</b>			
1	Up-gradation of Infrastructure: Average built up area per T. Lodge – 800 Sq. M. X 30 Nos.	24000 Sq.m.	2500	600
2	Up-gradation, Construction of roads (2 lane) up to the tourists destinations / infrastructure	100.00 Kms	4000000	4000
3	Up-gradation / maintenance of Vehicles – 5 Jeeps & 2 buses	10 years	1000000	100
4	New vehicles – Jeeps, Mini buses & maintenance	10 Nos	1000000	100
5	Landscape & Environment Design	50 Sites	600000	300
				<b>5100</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>PUBLICITY / MARKETING</b>			
6	Signage & Hoardings	300 Nos	50000	150
7	Publicity, Literature etc.	20 years	1000000	200
8	Computerisation & Information Technology	20 years	2000000	400
9	Information Counters	30 Nos	500000	150
10	Programmes, Activities	20 years	500000	100
				<b>1000</b>
<b>III</b>	<b>HUMAN RESOURCE / RESEARCH</b>			
11	Documentation & Research of Cultural Heritage	3 years	Lump sum	100
12	Capacity Building, Staff Training	20 years	2000000	400
				<b>500</b>
<b>IV</b>	<b>TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE</b>			
13	Cultural Centres in Metro cities	5 Nos	10000000	500
14	New Wayside Toilets / Amenities	30 Nos	1000000	300
15	New Tourist Lodges	15 Nos	10000000	1500
				<b>2300</b>
<b>V</b>	<b>PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT</b>			
16	Urban Tourism – Kohima, Dimapur	2 Cities	100000000	2000
17	International Coll. Projects	2 Nos	100000000	2000
18	Tourism Festivals – 2 Nos	20 years	1000000	200
19	New Large Projects	20 Nos	50000000	10000
20	Tourism Circuits	5 Nos	10000000	500
				<b>14700</b>
<b>21</b>	<b>Total</b>			<b>23600</b>
22	Unforeseen		10 %	2360
23	Contingencies		5 %	1180
24	Inflation		10 %	2360
25	Administrative Expenses		10 %	2360
26	Consultancy Fees		10 %	2360
<b>27</b>	<b>GRAND TOTAL</b>			<b>34220</b>
	<b>SAY APPROX.</b>			<b>35000</b>

**THE BLOCK ESTIMATE: RS. THREE HUNDRED FIFTY CRORES ONLY**

## **FEASIBILITY OF THE PROJECT:**

The Block Estimate shows the total Perspective Plan Outlay for 20 years is approximately around Rs. 350 Crores only.

After looking at the item heads and also the strategic approach following points need specific mention:

1. The items 1 to 5 covering the Basic Infrastructure amount to Rs.51.00 Crores, which is approx. 14.57 % of the total cost
2. The items 6 to 10 covering the Publicity and Marketing amount to Rs. 10.00 Crores, which is approx. 2.86 % of the total cost
3. The items 11 & 12 covering Human Resource Development & Research amount to Rs. 5 Crores, which is approx. 1.43 % of the total cost
4. The items 13 to 15 covering Tourism Infrastructure, some of which is in the pipeline and awaiting approval amount to Rs. 23 Crores, which is approx. 6.57 % of the total cost
5. The items 16 to 20 covering new innovative Tourism Product Development amounts to Rs. 147 Crores which is approx. 42 % of the total cost
6. The items 25 & 26 covering Administrative and Consultancy expenses amount to Rs. 47.20 Crores, which is approx. 13.5 % of the total cost

The major item in this Plan is the new innovative Product Development projects, which takes about 42 % of the total outlay. Considering the strategy already mentioned in the earlier chapters for these projects, it is clear that these projects will be collaborative projects, likely to be sponsored by various other departments and funding agencies. The Mizoram Tourism will have to invest its time and preliminary expenses for the preparation of the detailed proposals, which will be about 20 % of the cost of these projects i.e. 8.40 % of the total cost. This could be manageable within the resources provided by the state and also assistance provided by the central government.

The Publicity & Marketing activities take about 2.86 % of the total cost which is also manageable within the resources of the state government complemented with other sponsorships.

The costs of Basic Infrastructure including up-gradation of existing infrastructure, creating new service infrastructure and new projects (already in the pipeline and awaiting approval), which is about 14.57 % of the total cost amounting to approx. Rs. 51.00 Crores over the period of 20 years could be within the budgetary provision of the Ministry of Tourism, GOI. Under the present allocation, the special provision for the 8 states of Northeast region is Rs. 14.80 Crores i.e approx. Rs. 1.85 Crores per state.

Thus the proposal of the Perspective Plan as worked out looks economically feasible. It is also envisaged that there will be average 10 % annual increase in the tourist traffic due to these overall efforts. It may boost further more after 5 / 10 years. The overall increase by 100 % in the next 10 years will itself make the Nagaland Tourism a profit-making department. At present level also, they have almost managed to cover the recurring costs.

**We feel that the Perspective Plan will not only be economically feasible but also will make the Tourism Development in Nagaland very sustainable.**

## **7. COMMUNITY PARTICIPATION & EMPLOYMENT GENERATION:**

In the absence of economic infrastructure and other manufacturing agencies, agriculture continues to be the main occupation of about 90 % of people in Nagaland.

The costs and benefits for Nagaland Tourism according to the modified version could be like this:

**Hotel Rooms:** For 10 lakhs tourists (with average length of stay 8 nights, 40 % average annual occupancy, 1.5 guests per room) annual bed nights available per room will be approx. 400) The number of rooms required will be approx. 15000. The average cost (all inclusive) per room will be Rs. 10 lakhs.

Over the next 20 years (2002 to 2021) the expected number of tourists in Nagaland ranges between 12, 000 and 45, 000 and the subsequent need of rooms ranges between 350 and 1000 (see chapter 7). Thus the investments will range from Rs. 35 Crores in 2002 and Rs. 100 Crores in 2021. Most of this investment will be in private sector.

**Employment generation:** Direct – 2 persons per room, Indirect – 4 persons per room. Thus 350 to 1000 rooms will generate direct employment for 700 to 2000 persons and indirect employment for 1400 to 4,000 persons making the total employment for 2100 to 6,000 persons over the next 20 years

**Air Transport:** For 10 lakhs tourists (with average distance 2000 km., annual 200 round trips, 200 seats per aircraft, 50 % load factor, 100 passengers per aircraft, 10 % foreign tourists) number of aircraft required will be 10. The average cost per aircraft will be Rs. 500 Crores.

As per the requirements of Nagaland, the need for 12,000 tourists in 2001 to 45,000 in 2021 will be 1 to 2 aircrafts. These could also be shared with the adjoining Northeast states. Thus the investment will range from Rs. 500 Crores in 2002 to Rs.1000 Crores in 2021.

**Employment Generation:** Average 450 persons per aircraft. Thus 450 to 900 persons may be employed between 2002 and 2021.

Other Transport (Railway & Road): The majority of the tourists will depend on these transport system. Intra state transport will be also through these means. The needs for the number of tourists from 12,000 to 45,000 over the next 20 years will be approximately 1 % per day. Thus approximate requirements will be 3 buses (2/3 passengers) and 10 jeeps/taxis (1/3 passengers) in 2002, increasing to 12 buses and 40 jeeps/taxis in 2021. The investment will range from Rs. 150 lakhs (2002) to Rs. 600 lakhs (2021)

Employment Generation: Average 6 persons per bus and 3 persons per jeep/taxi. Thus approximately 50 to 200 persons may get employment in this sector between 2002 and 2021. This employment will be mostly for local people.

The requirements of investment in the development of rail linkage and subsequent employment generation cannot be predicted at this stage, however it will be considerably economical venture.

Foreign Exchange: At present the number of foreign tourists to Nagaland is very negligible (approx. 0.5 %). With more emphasis on the tourism development and conscious efforts to attract foreign tourists this may improve to 5 % after the first 10 years.

**Thus foreign exchange earning will be to the tune of Rs. 0.5 Crore (visitor spending) and Rs. 0.2 Crore (aviation) in 2012, which may increase to Rs. 1 Crore (visitor spending) and Rs. 0.4 Crore (aviation) in 2021.**

- The total outlay of the Perspective Plan over the next 20 years (2002 – 2021), amounts to Rs. 350 Crores, i.e. approximately Rs. 17.50 Crores per year.
- It has been estimated that in tourism sector, the investment of Rs. 10 lakhs creates about 58 jobs. Thus Nagaland Tourism has potential to create approx. 10000 jobs every year, on the implementation of the Perspective Plan.
- In addition to the job/employment generation directly in the tourism sector, the tourism development also creates opportunities for self-employment in service sector e.g. booking counters, information counters, STD booths, Cyber centres, tourist guides, tourism transport, taxi service, courier service etc. The effect of Employment Multiplier will be enormous in the underdeveloped state like Nagaland.
- There will be tremendous opportunity in the secondary employment sector, which provides bulk, services to tourism industry e.g. construction industry, farming and food production, furnishing and equipment suppliers, professionals and consultants etc.

### Cost Benefit Analysis of the Perspective Plan for Nagaland Tourism

Year	Direct Benefits	Indirect Benefits	Total	Cost Investment	Net Incremental Benefits
1	2	3	4	5	6
2002-03	16.62	19.21	35.83	30.00	5.83
2003-04	19.20	22.20	41.40	30.00	11.40
2004-05	22.16	25.61	47.77	32.00	15.77
2005-06	25.60	29.60	55.20	32.00	23.20
2006-07	29.57	34.18	63.75	28.50	35.25
2007-08	34.16	39.50	73.66	28.50	45.16
2008-09	39.45	45.61	85.06	18.50	66.56
2009-10	45.57	52.69	98.26	18.50	79.76
2010-11	52.64	60.87	113.51	18.00	95.51
2011-12	60.80	70.17	130.97	18.00	112.97
2012-13	70.23	81.21	151.44	10.50	140.94
2013-14	81.12	93.80	174.92	10.50	164.42
2014-15	93.69	108.34	202.03	8.00	194.03
2015-16	108.21	125.14	233.35	8.00	225.35
2016-17	124.99	144.54	269.53	8.00	261.53
2017-18	144.35	166.93	311.28	8.00	303.28
2018-19	166.74	192.82	359.56	8.75	350.81
2019-20	192.58	222.71	415.29	8.75	406.54
2020-21	222.42	257.23	479.65	8.75	470.90
2021-22	256.92	297.11	554.03	8.75	545.28

The present status of economy of Nagaland is quite dismal. The basic economy is based on agriculture, which is seasonal and unpredictable. The other sector that provides employment opportunities is the Government Service Sector, which also has stagnated. The state does not have potential for industrial development to provide large employment opportunities. Even the business opportunities are limited due to the geographical isolation of the state from the country and also due to socio-economic problems of the region. Nagaland has tremendous natural resources and they need to be conserved for its overall enhancement in a long term. Considering all these factors, Tourism Development based on strong emphasis of Eco-tourism will be the best opportunity for the socio-economical upliftment of the state of Nagaland.

The success of Tourism Development in the state like Nagaland particularly, will hinge on the local participation. Nagaland already has a strong tradition of Village Councils and Community participatory initiatives. The women and youth in Nagaland are also very active and full of enthusiasm. This potential can be tapped for multiple purposes. It will achieve employment generation in the otherwise deprived section of the society, will allow the government activity of tourism development to grow like efficient business and at the same time will bring in the feeling of ownership amongst the local people.

### **Women's Participation:**

The community participation through JTMP should be also complemented with another concerted effort to ensure the participation of Women in Tourism Development and Management. It is commendable that women in Nagaland are industrious, outgoing, full of enthusiasm and already in the forefront in many sectors. However, special opportunities must be created for their active involvement in the tourism sector. This is not necessarily to help them but also to help the tourism sector since it is in need of have human resources with aptitudes for service and hospitality. The women should be encouraged, with due incentives to take major responsibilities to run some of the activities of the tourism department. Even here, they should be treated like equal business partners. The scope and terms of reference have to be worked out jointly and carefully.

The participatory projects, both JTMP and WTP, have the potential to create enthusiasm amongst a large sector of Naga society. This would reduce the burden of the tourism department substantially and in turn will create tremendous enhancement in the tourism business.

## **8. PROPOSED STRATEGY & ACTION PLAN:**

### **STRATEGY:**

- Formation of Tourism Council at the State Government level to oversee the implementation and progress of the Perspective Plan for Tourism Development.
- Formation of Steering Committee at the Secretariat level to work out the detailed project development plan and to delegate its implementation.
- Formation of the Co-ordinating Committee at the Tourism Department level to obtain all the approvals from the central and state government and work out detailed implementation plan and supervise the project work
- Appointment of Professional Consultants to prepare the Master Plans and the Detailed Feasibility Reports (DFR) for specific projects
- Appointment of Professional Consultants to work out detailed Project Plans and Estimates for various projects according to the DFR
- Appointment of Agencies to implement the Projects according to the detailed project plans, guidelines and specifications
- Regular supervision, monitoring, reporting and documentation of the progress of various project
- Quarterly assessment of the Projects
- Completion reports of the Projects
- Appointment of Agencies to manage the completed Tourism Projects
- Implementation of the Phased Development
- Regular supervision, monitoring, reporting and documentation

- Annual Fiscal Assessment of the Project Work
- Annual Fiscal and Technical Audit of the Project Work
- Annual Overall Assessment

#### **ACTION PLAN:**

- Technical approval of the Perspective Plan for Tourism Development
- Organisation of a Seminar (3 / 5 days, in Nagaland) for the detailed presentation of the Perspective Plan followed by discussion, brainstorming and strategic action to launch the Tourism Development Project.
- Formation of all the advisory, controlling, supervising, co-ordinating and implementing committees should take place within 3 months of the approval.
- The committees will finalise the prioritisation of the projects for the first five years and initiate further action for the implementation of those projects. This decision should be taken within 6 months of the approval.
- The appointments of Professional Consultants for the individual projects, which have been prioritised by the committees. This process should be completed within 6 months of the approval so that the Consultants commence the work of preparation of the Master Plan and the DFR in the 7<sup>th</sup> month
- The Consultants complete and submit the Master Plan and the DFR of the respective Tourism Projects within 12 months of the approval.
- The Committees will approve the Master Plan and the DFR of various projects and initiate further action to make financial provision for the implementation and also to appoint the Consultants to prepare the detailed Project Plans and Estimates. This action will be taken within 15 months of the approval.
- The Working Groups will be given the responsibility of certain projects within the Perspective Plan, which could be implemented in-house by the Tourism Department. The implementation action on such projects will commence within 6 months of the approval.
- The Consultants will complete and submit the detailed Project Plans and Estimates within 18 months of approval. The Committees will assess and initiate these projects for implementation within 24 months of approval.
- The Agencies will be appointed for the implementation of the projects. The Project works will commence immediately and shall be completed within 36 months of the approval.
- The Committees will continue regular monitoring and assessment in consultation with the Professional Consultants.
- The routine work and activities of the Tourism Department will continue through the Working Groups of the Tourism Department.
- The Committees will carry out annual Fiscal and Technical audit of the Project Work in progress.

- The further progress of the Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development will continue with the similar strategy according to the phase wise development plan.

**The Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development of the State of Nagaland is envisioned for the next 20 years. Such a large and broad visionary plan requires to be phased out in a systematic manner for its realistic detailed planning and implementation.**

## **9. CONCLUSION:**

The proposed Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development in Nagaland takes into consideration all facts and recommends new and innovative complementary concepts without too much of financial liabilities. Nagaland Tourism will stabilise and then will get a boost due to these innovative large projects, which have varied character and could attract tourists from varied avenues. It is also possible to attract tourists to Nagaland at multiple times because of these diverse activities and attractions.

Nagaland state, like the others in the Northeast Region, has to deal with various difficulties, infrastructure hurdles and socio-political problems. These are beyond the control of one single state. It will take sometime to resolve these issues, when tourism in the region will start growing. The Perspective Plan envisages this and attempts to make the Tourism Department act like a catalyst to augment the tourism potential of the state. Over the years, tourism will be a community activity in Nagaland with Nagaland Tourism taking a role of the initiator and facilitator.

# **20 YEARS PERSPECTIVE PLAN FOR THE SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT OF TOURISM IN THE STATE OF NAGALAND**

## **CHAPTER – 1**

### **INTRODUCTION**

#### **1. BACKGROUND OF TOURISM DEVELOPMENT**

Man started travelling long distances after the invention of the wheel, about ten thousand years ago. Later on he created carts and also used animals to pull them. This provided speed and comfort to his travels. Some men travelled long distances for different reasons. About 2500 years ago, Goutam Buddha travelled to share the Truth that he had discovered, with the people of the world. His disciples travelled all over the world to spread the message of Buddhism. Alexander the Great, who was born in Greece, travelled eastwards up to India with a mission to conquer the world. About a thousand years ago, Adi Shankaracharya travelled from Kerala to all parts of India to spread the message of Hinduism. In this process, he set up four *dhams* in four directions of India, which have become sacred places for the people of India to visit every year. A lot of people in India have been travelling every year on pilgrimage tours to the *Himalayas* and to the sacred rivers of *Ganga and Yamuna*. Columbus and Vasco da Gama travelled in search of new land. There have been human migrations in history in the quest of fertile land and better opportunities. The Aryans who lived in Central Asia moved to Europe and India for environmental, social, political and economical reasons. However some people travelled in search of knowledge due to tremendous curiosity. They maintained travel accounts, which became historical records. Chinese travellers, Fa-hien and Huen Tsang, who visited ancient India, provided a lot of information on ancient India through their travelogues. This was travel, but not Tourism as we see it today.

The concept of Modern Tourism is not more than 50 or 60 years old. The world has become small due to the inventions brought out by science and technology. Travel and communication has become very easy and convenient. Industrialisation has also made our life easy. People do not have to work as hard as they did about a hundred years ago. They have leisure time to rest. They get holidays from work. Employers not only encourage their employees to take holiday, but also subsidise their travel. This has resulted in a travel boom all over the world. It has been estimated in 1997, that around 500 crore people travel for holidays every year and about 65 crores out of them travel internationally. This travelling to various destinations for pleasure and business cum holidays, by spending your own money is Modern Tourism. This tourism brings prosperity in the areas visited by people. It also brings people of the world closer to each other.

## 2. GLOBAL TOURISM TRENDS

Tourism has become one of the most flourishing industries in the world. Today, it is the second largest and fastest growing industry, next only to the petroleum industry. Worldwide, tourism is emerging as one of the biggest employers than any other economic sector. It offers opportunities for economic, cultural and political exchanges, generates employment, foreign exchange and raises living standards. It facilitates social integration and international understanding.

Table No.1: REGION WISE DISTRIBUTION OF ARRIVALS/RECEIPTS  
(1999 & 2000):

Region	Tourist arrivals (Millions)		% Change		Tourist receipts (US \$ Billion)		% Change	
	1999	2000	1999	2000	1999	2000	1999	2000
Africa	26.5	27.6	6.4	4.2	10.3	10.7	4.0	3.9
America	122.2	129.0	2.3	5.5	122.4	136.4	4.4	11.4
East Asia/ Pacific	97.6	111.9	10.9	14.7	75.2	82.5	6.4	9.7
Europe	380.2	403.3	1.7	6.1	233.1	231.5	0.6	0.7
Middle East	18.2	20.6	20.5	13.2	9.8	9.7	11.4	-1.1
South Asia	5.8	6.4	11.5	10.3	4.6	5.1	7.0	10.9
<b>World</b>	<b>650.4</b>	<b>698.8</b>	<b>3.8</b>	<b>7.4</b>	<b>455.4</b>	<b>475.8</b>	<b>2.9</b>	<b>4.5</b>

International tourism has grown steadily since 1950, as also tourism expenditure. The revenue from international tourism means a lot to the host country as it is contributed by foreign visitors in foreign exchange. This becomes very useful for the host country for its economic and infrastructure development. The World Tourism Organisation (WTO) estimates that international tourist arrivals will exceed 160 crores by the year 2020.

Tourism has become so important and competitive that about 150 countries have set up National Tourist Organisations to attract foreign tourists to their countries and also to encourage their own people to travel within their own country. The following table will provide a global picture (2000) of the country-wise earning in the world tourism (Source: WTO):

Table No. 2: WORLD TOP 20 TOURISM EARNERS (2000):

Rank	Country	International tourism receipts (US \$ Million)	International tourism arrivals in (000)	Rank
1	United States	85153	50891	2
2	Spain	31000	48201	3
3	France	29900	75500	1
4	Italy	27439	41182	4
5	United Kingdom	19544	25191	6
6	Germany	17812	18983	10
7	China	16231	31229	5
8	Austria	11440	17982	11
9	Canada	10768	20423	9
10	Greece	9221	12500	15
11	Australia	8442	4946	34
12	Mexico	8295	20643	8
13	Hongkong	7886	13059	14
14	Turkey	7636	9587	20
15	Russian Fed	7510	21169	7
16	Switzerland	7303	11400	17
17	Thailand	7119	9509	21
18	Belgium.	7039	6547	24
19	Netherlands	6951	10200	19
20	Korea Republic	6609	5322	29
	<b>WORLD TOTAL</b>	<b>475800</b>	<b>6988000</b>	

### 3. TOURISM POLICY IN INDIA

Economic planning in India has followed the system of five-year plans. Tourism found no mention in the first five-year plan. In the subsequent five-year plans, tourism was included along with the transport sector and emphasis was towards publicity, planning and assistance to states. It is only after 1958, when the Tourism Development Council was established that greater synergy was obtained between various tourism providers, the State Governments, the national carrier, and the travel industry. The economic importance of tourism was formally recognized in the fourth plan with emphasis towards international tourism and creation of tourist infrastructure. In the subsequent policies the focus was towards creation of infrastructure for tourist accommodation. The first attempt to formulate a 'National Tourism Policy' was in the year 1982 when a paper on tourism policy was presented before the parliament, which set long-term direction and purpose to tourism development and promotion in India.

The vast potential and the need for rapid development was recognized only in the seventh plan, subsequent to which tourism was accorded the status of an Industry, thereby encouraging private investments in this sector. In subsequent plans the primary responsibility of tourism development was with the private sector with the State and Central Government only providing essential infrastructure in specified tourism areas. The national action plan for tourism (1992), defines the objectives of tourism development in India and the primary strategy for development.

#### 4. OBJECTIVES OF TOURISM DEVELOPMENT IN INDIA

The statement on tourism policy, presented to Parliament in 1982, provides the philosophical underpinnings for the promotion of tourism in India as:

- a. It is a unifying and a nation-building force, through fostering greater national and international understanding, particularly amongst the youth of the country.
- b. It serves to preserve and enrich India's cultural heritage.
- c. It brings socio-economic benefits.

The policy document defines the specific objectives of tourism development in India as:

- a. To substantially improve facilities for domestic tourists.
- b. To accord high priority to the development of international tourism, in view of the importance of foreign exchange earning and economic contribution.
- c. In the recognition of historical and archaeological monuments being the largest element in attracting international tourists to India, to promote cultural tourism. This will be achieved by providing tourist facilities at major centres of cultural interest, in coordination with other agencies including State Governments.
- d. Tourism development should be a common endeavour of all agencies, so that the combined effort achieves comprehensive and integrated development, enabling tourism to make a positive and effective contribution to the economic growth of the country. In this effort, the Central Government will have primary responsibility in promoting international tourism, while playing a coordinating role supplementing the state effort wherever necessary.
- e. To promote tourism so as to bring sizable socio-economic benefits to those regions of the country which are rich in tourism potential.
- f. To promote regional tourism from the South Asian region.
- g. To adopt a selective approach to determine investment priorities, by adopting a travel circuit concept that will enable intensive development of selected destinations, it will encourage diversification of attractions and will open up backward areas, which hold many tourist attractions.
- h. To make tourism the vehicle for involving the youth of the country in national integration.

- i. To create tourism facilities for the lower middle class and the poorer sections of society.
- j. To adopt a marketing strategy that will broaden the tourist base in existing markets, explore new tourist markets, particularly regions where tourist traffic to India has been growing and to promote inter-regional travel. Amongst other regions, the policy document noted the vast Buddhist population in the Far East and the potential in making India a Buddhist destination.
- k. To preserve India's cultural and natural heritage, by educating people in appreciating their heritage.
- l. To give the Indian people a sense of unity and identity and a sense of belonging and pride, a broadening of their intellectual, emotional and cultural horizons, and to create a better understanding of the land, people and culture of India amongst international tourists.

Since the presentation of this policy document to Parliament in 1982, the objectives of the Ministry of Tourism have been further refined in the national action plan for tourism 1992, within the overall framework of the policy document. The objectives have been defined as:

- a. Socio economic development of regions
- b. Increasing employment opportunities to double by the end of the century
- c. Developing and promoting domestic tourism
- d. Preservation and enrichment of national heritage and environment, including support to arts and crafts
- e. Development of international tourism and optimisation of foreign exchange earnings to reach Rs. 100 billion from the present Rs. 24 billion
- f. Diversification of the tourism product to incorporate leisure, adventure, convention tourism, while retaining the traditional image of cultural tourism
- g. Increase India's share of world tourist to 1% from the present 0.4%

Over the years, the tourism policy has been evolving; the revenue growth from tourism has been increasing. The foreign exchange earnings from tourism went up from US \$ 3009 Million in 1999 to US \$ 3168 Million in 2000 (Source: RBI). Tourism today is among the largest earner of foreign exchange in India.

The strategy for achieving these objectives has been outlined as:

- e. Improvement of tourist infrastructure
- f. Developing areas on a selective basis for integrated growth, along with the marketing of destinations on the basis of a 'Special tourism area' concept.
- g. Restructuring and strengthening of institutions for development of human resources.
- h. Evolving a suitable policy for increasing foreign tourist arrivals and foreign exchange earnings.

## 5. ENVIRONMENTAL AND ECOLOGICAL PARAMETERS

Any development has to consider its possible adverse impacts on the surrounding environment and the conservation of various ecological elements must be considered as a priority obligation. The tourism development projects generally tend to be within the ecologically sensitive regions like hills, seashores, lakes, rivers, national parks / sanctuaries, heritage sites. Insensitive and haphazard planning for tourism development can ruin these regions of natural heritage. The tourism development plan for a region must carry out environmental impact assessment and work out the sustainable management strategy.

In the case of Nagaland, which lies in the ecologically sensitive region of Northeast India, the priority consideration for tourism development should be environmental, ecological and heritage conservation. The region also has very rich ethnic tribal culture and the whole tourism development plan should be sensitive to all the heritage parameters.

Considering the unique and environmentally fragile region of Northeast India in general, and Nagaland in particular, it is almost imperative that the tourism planning of the region should evolve around the concepts of Eco-tourism and Heritage Tourism.

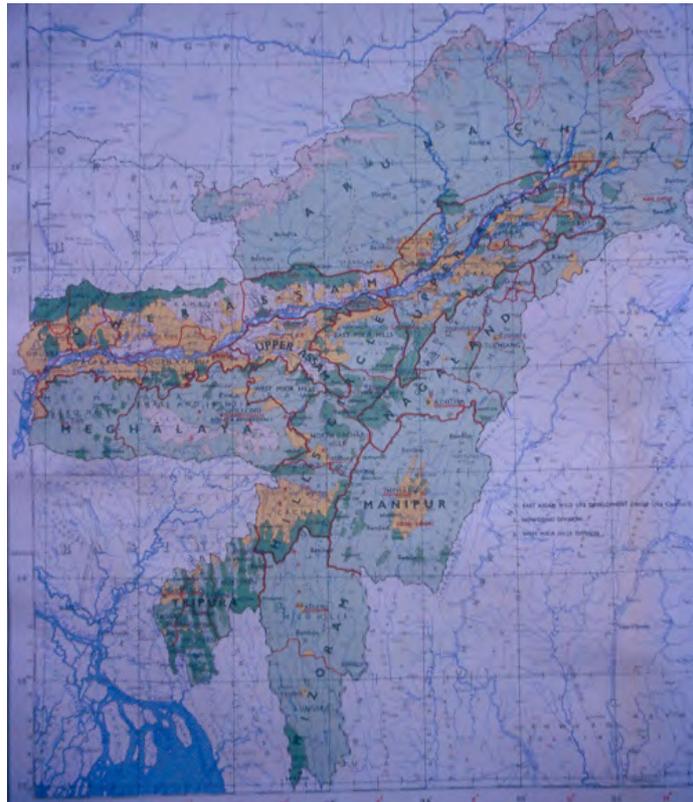
## 6. TOURISM DEVELOPMENT IN THE NORTHEAST

From ancient times, India's Northeast region has been the meeting place of many communities, faiths and cultures. It is a place of magical beauty and bewildering diversity. There are more than 166 ethnic tribes speaking many languages. Some groups have migrated over the centuries from places as far as Southeast Asia. They retain their cultural traditions but are beginning to adapt to contemporary lifestyles. Its jungles used to be dense. Today, the region is considered as one of the unique and fragile Biodiversity Hotspots in the world. The region's flora and fauna is unique. The terrain is mountainous and rugged. The rivers are mighty. Northeast is unique in the lushness of its landscape, the range of communities and the geographical and ecological diversity. The Northeast region includes the eight states of Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura, Mizoram, Manipur and Nagaland. The region has international borders with Myanmar, China, Bhutan, Nepal and Bangladesh.

It is unfortunate that due to socio-political and geographical reasons, the entire Northeast India has remained neglected and backward from the developmental point of view. In spite of very high literacy rate in the region (around 80%), the progress and benefits have not reached the Northeast even today. The concept of Tourism development is very recent in this region and is in its infancy. A few states like Sikkim and Assam have taken a few strides in developing tourism, with emphasis on eco-tourism, wildlife tourism, cultural tourism and adventure tourism. The other states have also commenced their efforts during the last decade.

However, the tourism development of the Northeast region needs to be targeted as a regional approach rather than via an individual state approach. The basic needs for tourism development of the region are efficient infrastructure, good connectivity between the states and peace in the region. The entry permit formality required for a few states for both domestic and international tourists is a major deterrent for the region's tourist attractiveness. The region has tremendous and diverse potential for tourism development, which could attract international and national tourists. Concerted and sincere efforts are required from the Central Government to unify these eight states for infrastructure development and the achievement of peace in the region.

Fig. 1 – Map of the Northeast Region



## 7. TOURISM DEVELOPMENT IN NAGALAND

Nagaland is a land of transition; a satisfying compromise between the old order and the new; a fusion of styles and cultures of the hill tribes. In 1866 the Naga Hills district was formed under the Bengal Presidency under the British Rule. Later on it continued to be a district in Assam. In 1957 a new administrative unit was formed in Assam named as Naga Hill Tuensang Area. On the 1<sup>st</sup> December 1963 Nagaland was inaugurated as the 16<sup>th</sup> state of India, with its capital at Kohima. The state is bounded by Assam in the west, Myanmar on the east, Arunachal Pradesh and parts of Assam on the north and Manipur in the south. The state consists of eight administrative districts, inhabited by 16 major tribes along with other sub-tribes. (See Appendix – d, General Information)

Shrouded in mystery, greatly awe inspiring till recent times, the territory of Nagaland finds mention in the ancient /Sanskrit scriptures, wherein it is hailed as 'Nag Bhumi' – the land of serpents. Due to the extremity of its location, the rugged terrain, coupled with dense forests and wildlife, Nagaland remained for long, almost a virgin territory where few mortals from the outside world dared to tread. But not so anymore. With growing awareness and interest in travel and tourism, the travellers relentlessly search for newer destinations. Consequently Nagaland is fast emerging as a tourist destination in its own right. Interestingly the state has its own distinctive cultural heritage steeped in tribal beliefs, traditions, superstitions, arts and crafts, dance and music, legends and myths. Nagaland abounds in serene natural beauty and panoramic views of the hills, which in fact are the eastern offshoots of the mighty Himalayas.

Nagaland is the land of songs, music and dance where you can hear folk songs praising the brave deeds on ancient warriors and folk heroes, love songs immortalising tragic love stories, gospel songs and modern tunes. Each of the sixteen odd tribes and sub-tribes that dwell in this exotic hill state can easily be distinguished by the colourful and intricately designed costumes, jewellery and beads that they wear. The present generation of Nagas have ventured into fashion designing in a big way, reproducing fabrics that represent the ancestral motifs blended with modern appeal. Nagaland has become a rich fashion centre of the Northeast.

Nature could not have been kinder to Nagaland, sometimes referred to as the 'Switzerland of the East'. The exquisitely picturesque landscapes, the vibrantly colourful sunrise and sunset, lush and verdant flora etc. make this land a perfect breathtaking experience. The inhabitants belong to the Indo-Mongoloid stock, whose ancestors lived off nature's abundant gifts, blessed with friendly dispositions. Above all, the people here are warm-hearted and extremely hospitable.

Nagaland is blessed with a salubrious climate throughout the year and one can visit it anytime. If one is looking for a quiet get away from the hectic city life, it provides the right ambience. For the adventurous and the intrepid, Nagaland is an ideal place for trekking, jungle camping and offers limitless exploration possibilities in its lush and verdant sub-tropical rain forests, which are also a treasure trove of a plethora of medicinal plants. Nagas, by nature, are lovers of fun and festivities and here life is one long festival.

Nagaland has excellent potential for tourism and the state government has declared Tourism as a 'Priority Sector' under the State Industrial Policy 2000. The entry permit system is a major deterrent for tourists. Within a small geographical area of about 16,579 Sq. Kms. Nagaland offers plenty of attractions for tourists in the form of Natural beauty, Hills and Valleys, Rivers and Lakes, Forests and Wildlife, Sanctuaries, Heritage, Ethnic Culture, Music and Dance, Handicrafts and Art Forms, Agriculture.

The young state of Nagaland is economically weak and entirely depends on its agriculture. Inefficient infrastructure and poor connectivity are the major deterrents for the tourists. However, the State Department of Tourism is trying to develop tourist facilities at various places. The state has excellent potential for tourism development with emphasis on Eco-tourism/Adventure tourism and Heritage Tourism. However the success of its tourism highly depends on the enthusiasm and inputs from the state government and also on infrastructure development of the entire Northeast region.

## 8. OBJECTIVES OF THE STUDY:

The Department of Tourism, Govt. of India proposed this study in order to prepare a 20 year perspective plan for the sustainable development of tourism in various Indian states with the following major objectives:

1. Prepare a 20 year perspective plan for developing sustainable tourism in the state, giving phased programme considering the resources available
2. Indicate short-term and long-term plans, targets and ground realities
3. Indicate all activities to be undertaken by different agencies with a definite time frame to achieve these activities
4. Assess the existing tourism scenario in the state with respect to natural resources, heritage and other socio-cultural assets, quantitative and demographic factors like population, employment, occupation, income levels, services and infrastructure etc.
5. Review and evaluate the status of existing tourism schemes in the state
6. Plan expansion/up-gradation to the existing facilities and also propose new tourism projects
7. Arrive at an indicative cost configuration of likely investment on infrastructure development and prioritise investment needs over the next 20 years
8. Prepare an action plan for implementation of potential development schemes in conformity with the guidelines provided by the concerned state/central departments and the funding agencies
9. Indicate projected tourist arrivals and prioritise schemes for employment generation
10. Prepare strategy for the participation of local people in tourism development
11. Deal with environmental issues of the tourism sites and suggest measures for the mitigation of adverse impacts
12. Suggest strategy for privatisation of the tourism infrastructure owned by the state
13. Consider and suggest sources of funding for the tourism development in the state and strategy to develop a coordinating agency in the state
14. Work out strategy to project and protect cultural identity of the state and its ethnic people through appropriate tourism plans

## 9. METHODOLOGY:

The Technical proposal and the Inception Report provide the details of the methodology and approach for this study. The study has been conducted according to the broad guidelines provided by the Department of Tourism, Government of India (appendix – a).

The study was carried out by a multidisciplinary team of experts under the overall coordination of the Principal Investigator (PI) and the Co-investigator (CI). The study commenced in March 2002 with literature survey and strategic planning. Formats for questionnaire and interviews were prepared. Two field visits (approx. one week each) were carried out in April and May 2002. The PI and CI carried out their visits along with the tourism officials. The team members traversed approximately 1500 Kms of distance in the state during the field visits, using different modes of travel. The questionnaires (appendix – b) were sent to people (sample size 100) from various categories connected directly or indirectly with tourism in the Northeast. Extensive interviews were carried out in a predesigned format (appendix – c) with selected individuals (over 50 Nos.) connected with tourism development and government sector. The difficult terrain and adverse climatic conditions created several hurdles for the field studies. However, in spite of all odds and shortage of time, interesting data was collected, analysed and the findings are used for the preparation of this report. Additionally, extensive photo documentation has also been carried out.

## CHAPTER – 2

### NAGALAND

#### 1. INTRODUCTION

Nagaland, the sixteenth State of the Indian Union, was created on December 1, 1963. The Naga communities predominantly inhabit the State and hence it forms a single cultural region generally definable by common cultural and linguistic traditions. The State was carved out of the territories earlier known as the Naga Hills-Tuensang Area (NHTA), through the State of Nagaland Act of 1962. The major part of what is now Nagaland excluding its eastern side consisting of Tuensang and Mon Districts was formerly a District of Assam under the name Naga Hills. The District of Naga Hills was opened in 1866 with its headquarters at Samaguting in the west in the foothills about 15 km away from Dimapur. Later the district headquarters was shifted to Wokha in the heart of the hills in 1876 and two years later in 1878 it was shifted to Kohima. The present Tuensang and Mon Districts came under administrative rule in 1979. Present Arunachal Pradesh was also under the Tuensang Frontier Division of North-East Frontier Agency. In 1957, the then Naga Hills was renamed the Naga Hills Tuensang Area or NHTA. In 1961 the NHTA became a de-facto Tribal State under the name Nagaland with de-facto legislative ministry.

#### 2. GEOGRAPHY

The State of Nagaland, covering an area of 16,579 km, is encircled by Assam in the north and west, by Myanmar and Arunachal Pradesh in the east and Manipur in the south. It lies between 25° 6' and 27° 4' N and between 93° 20' and 95° 15' E. It is a hilly State, with only a few hundred square km of plains along the foothills in the Western part of the State. The hills are a continuation of the Myanmar Hills and are joined to the sub-Himalayan ranges in the North and into the hills of Manipur and Mizoram. The ranges stretch in general from northeast to southwest and in between the ranges there are steep narrow valleys. The hills are low on the west where they meet the plains of Assam, from where they gradually rise to heights of 1500 m and to 3500 m spreading to the east bordering Myanmar. Geographically, the Naga Hills can be divided into the following categories:

i) Outer foothills of the West: This rises from the plains of Assam, plains of Dimapur, Naginimora and Tijit on the western part of Nagaland. These outer foothills are low ranging from 300 to 800 m alt. In the west there are several valleys such as Ghaspani valley in Kohima District, Baghti, Bhandari, and Merapani valleys in Wokha District, Tzurang, Changki, Lakhuni and Tuli valleys in Mokochung District and Tiru valley in Mon District.

ii) Medium hill ranges in the intermediate zone: These hill ranges rise to about 1600 m alt. towards the east. They run through the middle of the State like its spinal cord. The main human settlements are located in these ranges.

iii) High hill ranges of the East: The high hills in the east are known as the Patkai hill range and in the south are known as the Barail range. The two highest peaks are Japfu (3014 m) in the Barail range and Saramati (3848 m) in the Patkai range of Tuensang District on the extreme east near the Myanmar border. Mount Saramati is the only snow-capped mountain other than the Himalaya in the country.

The State is divided into eight districts: Kohima, Mokochung, Tuensang, Mon, Wokha, Zunheboto, Phek and Dimapur. The maximum length of the State is about 255 km while the maximum breadth does not exceed 145 km. The capital is Kohima (1444 m alt).

The Barail and the Japfu ranges form the watershed of the State and as they are close to the western boundary, none of the rivers attain any sizeable proportion until they enter the plains of Assam. Therefore there are few rivers in Nagaland, which are quite small in width and length. The five main drainage systems in the State: Tizu, Doyang, Dhansiri, Dekhu, and Milak. No river of the State is navigable in any season. In the dry season, the rivers are completely dry but in the rainy season, the rivers are torrents. There are very few waterfalls in Nagaland.

Nagaland has a monsoon climate. However, unlike the plains of Assam, the winters are cold, as are even the summers at times. The temperatures drop to 3° C in winter in the hills and 6° C in the plains, while the average summer temperature is 25° C in the hills and 34° C in the plains. The average annual rainfall is between 1750 mm and 2500 mm. Most rain is received between June to September though rain fall occurs for about nine months of the year. The southern part gets heavier rainfall than the northern part of the State. Frost occurs in Saramati range, Japfu range, Aghanato, Zenheboto, Longkhim and Pfutsero.

Geologically the rocks of Nagaland are comparatively young, only about 140 million years. Nagaland was apparently once under the sea which existed between India and Myanmar. Nagaland then rose above sea level later in geological time. Therefore Nagaland has evidence of marine deposits represented by Disang Shale, sandstone, phyllite, slate and limestone, containing fossils of marine organisms. Slate of superior quality is found in Tizu valley and is used for commercial purposes. Deposits of chrysotile asbestos are found towards the south. Coal is sparsely distributed in the highlands. The soils of the State are mainly of two types, ferruginous red soils and laterites. The former is abundant. It is poor in lime, potash, iron oxide and phosphorous content.

Nagaland is within a seismically active belt. The area was severely affected by the great Cachar earthquake of 1869, and by the Assam earthquake of 1897. Nagaland is now within zone V of the seismic zoning map of India.

Fig. 2 – Map of Nagaland:



### 3. PEOPLE AND CULTURE

The earliest records throwing light on the politico-economic linkages of the Nagas with others are the Buranjis, the chronicles of the Ahoms of Assam. The early Buranjis describe that the Ahom Sukhapa encountered the Nagas of the Patkoi area as early as the twelfth century. Although the Ahoms never subjugated the Nagas, the strategic location of their habitat and particularly the economic interest of the Ahoms periodically brought them under the orbit of Ahom confederacy against external aggressions.

The Nagas belong to the Indo-Mongoloid family. The fourteen major Naga tribes are: Angami, Ao, Chakhesang, Chang, Kabui, Khemungam, Konyak, Lotha, Phom, Pochury, Rengma, Sangtam, Sema, Yimchunger and Zeliang. Some of these tribes are of comparatively recent origin. The Chakhesangs were earlier known as the Eastern Angamis and are a combination of the Chakri, Khezha, and Sangtam subtribes, the word Chakhesang being an acronym. The non-Naga inhabitants of Nagaland who are recognised as Scheduled Tribes are Garo, Kachari, Kuki and Mikir. There are also Nepali, Bengali, Bihari, Marwari, and Assamese as migrant communities in Nagaland.

The origin of the word “Naga” is not known though theories abound. These theories variously claim the origin of Naga from “nanga” meaning naked, from “nag” meaning mountain, or from “noga” which is derived from “nok” which means folk in some hill dialects. Be that as it may, the hill tribes living in present day Nagaland did not know that they were called “Naga” till recent times. This indicates that the areas now known as Nagaland had no generic term applicable to the whole race, indicating that the area was occupied by a conglomeration of different tribes. Even as late as 1954, Verrier Elwin found the people of Tuensang seldom speaking of themselves as nagas but as

Konyaks, Changs, Phoms etc. The name “Naga” appears to be actually given to the hill people by the plains people. The exact date of the Naga entrance into the Naga Hills cannot be established. On the basis of language, the Nagas belong to the Tibeto-Burmese group, from North-western China, between the upper waters of the Yangtse-Kiang and Hwang-Ho rivers.

One theory is that the Nagas came with groups of migrant tribes who moved towards Southeast Asia from China through the Himalayan section. This route extended downwards through the Patkai, Arakan Yoma and the Banda arc towards Java and Sumatra. This theory proposes that the Nagas settled in the Naga Hills en route. The other theory suggests that the Nagas originated from a group of tribes who moved up from Southeast Asia. Oral sources and tradition point to migration from the south. All the Naga tribes are fond of cowrie and conch shells, which they use as ornaments. This may point to a bygone settlement near the ocean. The log drums are also believed to have links with the dug out canoes of the Pacific Islands.

Despite several clashes, the Nagas lived adjacent to the Ahoms of Assam in the medieval period. The Ahoms sometimes enlisted Nagas in their army to fight in wars. When the Mughals invaded the Ahoms, the Nagas joined the Ahoms to fight against them. The Ahoms also constructed a road called Naga Ali (Naga Road), whose purpose was to have easy access to trade as well as to provide a route of escape into the Naga Hills when invaded by enemies, as when happened when the Burmese ruled Assam from 1816-1824. The Nagas provided protection and hospitality until the British in the Anglo-Burmese war defeated the Burmese in 1825. By the treaty of Yandabo (1826), the Burmese withdrew from Assam. The Ahom kingdom came under British rule, and the Nagas continued to trade with the Ahoms under their new masters.

The British colonised Nagaland for the following reasons: concern for the safety and security of the north-east frontiers, cessation of Naga raids, need for a direct route from Assam to Manipur for developing trade relations with the Manipuris, need to protect commercial interests in upper Cachar, and also to guard against Burmese intervention in Manipur, prevention of annexation of Naga territory by the King of Manipur. After several losses and after suffering innumerable raids from the Nagas, the British decided to use their superior forces to annex the Naga Hills to their empire. The Nagas were defeated and the British formed a New District known as Naga Hills in 1866, which was a district of Assam. However, the Eastern Naga Hills were never conquered by the British. Battles between the British and the Nagas continued. In 1880, peace was made between the Chiefs of Khonoma and the British representative at Mezoma, and British rule became established in Nagaland.

The arrival of Christian missionaries in Nagaland was the next significant chapter in the history of the Naga people. The progress of Christianity in Nagaland in the 19<sup>th</sup> century was initially slow as the Nagas had a hostile attitude towards the missionaries. Those that were converted to Christianity were persecuted by their clan and sometimes by the whole village. However, later many sections of the Nagas adopted the Christian faith.

In 1945, Sir Charles Pawsey, the last British administrator of Nagaland, established an institution called the Naga Hills District Tribal Council. In 1946, its name was changed to the Naga National Council (NNC), and it emerged as the only political organisation in Nagaland. The NNC wanted independence for Nagaland after the British left. Nagaland declared its independence on August 14, 1947. This led to serious conflict between the NNC and the newly formed Government of India. In 1956, the Federal Government of Nagaland was formed by the NNC, and it maintained an army called the Naga Army. In the 1950s and 1960s, there were serious clashes between the Indian Army and the Naga army, and as the conflict became more severe, the Naga Army went underground, and contributes to the high level of insurgency present in the area today.

The organisation of the village community differs from tribe to tribe. For example, the Angami, Lotha, Rengma and Ao villages have a democratic structure, wherein whenever an important decision is to be taken, all the villagers assemble and take a collective decision. The Semas have a system of hereditary village chiefs. The chief is the overlord of the village and all others are his dependents or mighimi. These mighimi are given plots of land, which they cultivate on behalf of the chief. The structural framework of Sema society encouraged expansionist colonisation, and the central feature of the village was the bachelor's dormitory or the morung. The xylophones or the log-drums are a striking feature of the Ao, Chang, Konyak, Yimchunger and Sangtam tribes. The drum was generally kept close to the morung, and was usually made out of the hollowed trunk of a tree with the carving of a mithun head at one end. The Ao treated the log drum almost like the village deity and the drum became an important part of rituals. It was primarily a war drum, though it could also be beaten for other important occasions.

The Feasts of Merit are the hallmark of social distinction for a Naga. There are a series of such feasts, each one costlier than the preceding one. Each feast entitles the host to social distinction and progressively increases his standing and position in the community. It also entitles him to wear special dress and ornaments and to decorate his house in particular fashion. There is also a Feast of Friendship, which is given to strengthen the bonds of friendship between two individuals. The resemblance between these feasts and those of the elaborate Vedic sacrifices is striking.

The staple food of the Nagas is rice. Meat is also consumed, and it could be of common items such as beef, pork or chicken, or also of a variety of animals such as mithun, dogs, cats, fish, spiders, birds, crabs, larvae, frogs, and elephants. However, there is a taboo on some animals such as the tiger and leopard as the Nagas believe that Man, Tiger and Spirit were all brothers at the beginning of creation.

Rice-beer is the main beverage and is consumed by all ages. It is highly nutritive and should be considered more as a food rather than a drink. Milk is not popular; however the demand for milk is increasing especially in the cities.

Naga society has been earlier known for headhunting practices. However headhunting ended among the Lotha and Rengma tribes in 1880, among the Angamis and Aos in 1905, among the Semas in 1909, and among the Khemungans in 1963. The last reported cases of headhunting occurred in 1963 and in 1969. These were in the Tuensang district where it is claimed that the spirit of headhunting is still alive.

The most prominent item of Naga dress is the shawl, whose pattern and motif serves to identify the tribe and sub-tribe. A warrior's shawl or the shawl of a man who has performed a Feast of Merit is different from that of an ordinary villager. Apart from the shawl, the normal working dress is the kilt, which is usually black in colour. It may be embroidered with cowries in which case it signifies a male dress. Ornamentation in the form of beads, feathers, brass or ivory armlets, leg rings of cane etc. is regularly used. Human hair is also used to augment body decoration; nowadays goat's hair is used. Ornaments, apart from being decorative, also signify victory in war. Tattooing is also fairly common, and whether tattoos are restricted to particular sexes or the locations of the tattoos also vary from tribe to tribe.

The Nagas also have a range of weaponry such as spears and a hatchet called the dao. The dao is a multi-purpose weapon. It is used to fell trees, cut fowls, divide meat, carve posts and even to kill enemies if necessary. It is a lifelong companion for each Naga.

All major Naga tribes have their own language. Furthermore, the language varies from village to village within a single tribe. The tribal groups, when they do not understand each other's language converse in Naga-Assamese, or Nagamese. This is a hybrid mixture of Assamese and Naga languages but it serves as the lingua franca of the Naga people.

The population of Nagaland (provisional census 2001) is 19,88,636, and the literacy rate is 67.11%. The density of the population is 120 persons per square km.

#### 4. NATURAL ENVIRONMENT AND ECOLOGY

Though Nagaland is a small State, it has been endowed with a wide variety of forest types on account of its unique geographic location and a wide range of physiographic terrains available in the State.

- I. Northern Tropical Wet Evergreen Forests: These forests once covered the Namsa-Tizit area but now only a small vestige is found in the Zankam area. It is found only in Mon District. The dominant species are hollong (*Dipterocarpus macrocarpus*), makai (*Shorea assamica*) and nahor (*Mesua ferrea*).
- II. Northern Tropical Semi-evergreen Forests: These type of forests are found in the foothills of the Assam-Nagaland border in Mokokchung,

Wokha and Kohima Districts. In this type, there is also inclusion of several deciduous species within the wet evergreen type.

- III. Northern Sub-tropical Broad Leaved Wet Hill Forests: This type is found in the hill areas below 1800 m and above 500 m in all districts of Nagaland.
- IV. Northern Sub-tropical Pine Forests: This type is found between 1000-1500 m in parts of Phek and Tuensang Districts of Nagaland. Pine is the dominant species and is found mixed with *Quercus*, *Schima*, *Prunus*, *Betula* and *Rhododendron*.
- V. Northern Montane Wet temperate Forests: These forests are found in the higher reaches of the tallest mountains in Nagaland above 2000 m in the Japfu, Saramati, Satoi, and Chengtang Ranges. The species are typically evergreen with *Quercus*, *Michelia*, *Magnolia*, *Prunus*, *Schima*, *Alnus* and *Betula*.
- VI. Temperate Forests: These types of forests are found in the peaks of the tallest mountains (above 2500 m) like Saramati and Dzulou area. The dominant species are *Rhododendron*, patches of *Juniperus coxii* and birch.

The forest in the state exhibit distinct gradients depending on the altitude, physiography, rainfall and the intensity of biotic interference which singly or in combination with other factors creates a striking variety of ecological situations. Exposed to the heavy rainfall of monsoon climate, Nagaland is endowed with rich floristic compositions. High humidity for a greater part of the year coupled with low evaporation rates should have been sufficient to maintain evergreen forests throughout. However, due to hilly terrain and high porosity of the soil (except in Kohima and Pfutsero area), the water retention is less. Furthermore, the natural vegetation formations are in danger of extreme fragmentation and degradation due to the practice of shifting cultivation or jhoom throughout the State.

Nagaland also has mineral deposits of various types. Coal is found in the foothills of Wokha District, Jhanji-Desoi valley in Mokokchung District, and in the Tiru Valley and Borjan in Mon District. Other resources such as limestone, iron, chromium, nickel, cobalt, copper, molybdenum, marble, slate, chromite and magnesite are also found.

Nagaland has protected areas as under:

- a. Intangki National Park, Kohima district: 202.02 Sq. Kms.
- b. Rangapahar Wildlife Sanctuary, Dimapur district: 4.70 Sq. Kms.
- c. Fakim Wildlife Sanctuary, Tuensang district: 6.42 Sq. Kms.
- d. Puliebadze Wildlife Sanctuary, Kohima district: 9.23 Sq. Kms.

The state government has identified interesting natural features for general awareness about the state's natural treasure.

## 5. SOCIO-ECONOMICS

Nagaland basically has an agricultural economy. Over 70% of the population is dependent on agriculture. Jhoom cultivation and terrace cultivation are the two modes of agriculture. Although jhoom cultivation may have been sustainable in the past with sufficient fallow periods between jhoom cycles, the present demands on the land owing to population increases have resulted in short fallow periods causing much land degradation. The State Government is attempting to persuade people to shift from jhoom to terrace cultivation, and also to restore lands that have been degraded by jhooming, by the adoption of tree farming particularly of economic trees such as fruit trees etc. A major initiative has been initiated called the NEPED project: Nagaland Empowerment of People through Economic Development. The vision statement of this ICEF funded project is as follows: Communities should become self-reliant and no longer subsidy oriented. Farmers should practice sustainable agriculture, building on traditional practices and integrating agricultural innovations. Through the development of agro-business, establishment of marketing infrastructure and entrepreneurship, both men and women should benefit from increased economic return and improved agricultural production. Communities should be empowered and actively manage their own affairs and resources judiciously, and women should play an active role in community decisions. Government should consult with communities on policies and practices that affect them.

The main crops are rice, millet, maize and pulses. Cash crops such as sugarcane and potato are also becoming popular. A remarkable feature of the economy is that there are no absentee landlords and there is no class of landless peasants. The village society is so organised that the basic requirements of food, clothing and shelter are guaranteed to all members.

Spinning and weaving were earlier the only significant cottage industries in Nagaland. The Aos, Rengmas and Lothas used to grow cotton sufficient not only for their own requirements but surplus even to be given to neighbouring tribes. In recent years, however, mill-made yarn, by virtue of its easy accessibility and cheap price, is substituting the yarn made locally.

Money as a medium of exchange was introduced only during World War II. Prior to that, wealth was assessed in terms of land holding, number of mithuns and cattle, which an individual possessed.

The major source of revenue for the Government until recently was the house-tax. It was levied at the rate of Rs 3/- per house in the Angami area and Rs. 2/- in other tribal areas. Now Government revenue is supplemented by the sale of forest products and tax on urban commodities.

In a tribal area like Nagaland, the obstacles to economic development generally arise out of the prevailing physical, social and economic conditions. The physical conditions relate to the hilly terrain, dense forests and difficult communications. The social obstacles are the people's initial apathy to any

kind of innovation, lack of education, and primitive means of production. The economic difficulties are the dearth of capital, absence of marketing centres and other factors, to which may also be added the subversive, insurgent forces with the State. On the basis of preliminary investigation of the National Council of Applied Economic Research, three medium-level industries were established: The Nagaland Sugar Mill at Dimapur, a Paper and Pulp Mill at Tuli and a Plywood Factory at Tizit. Subsequently other small factories such as TV assembly unit at Dimapur have been commissioned.

The State is also trying to encourage small-scale and cottage industries. Weaving training-cum-production centres have been set up at Mokokchung and Dimapur, a Cottage Industries training-cum-production centre at Mon, and a Cottage Industries Training Centre at Aghunato have been established.

The economy of Nagaland has fortunately several distinctive features, which should accelerate the pace of development.

The land-man ratio is quite favourable, the density of population being 120 per square km as against 267 for the country as a whole.

- An average Naga family is generally self-sufficient in matters of clothing, food, housing, fuel and other minor requirements.
- There is no landless peasantry and there are no exploiting landlords.
- The available labour force is usefully employed in productive occupations.
- People believe in the dignity of labour, and even a well to do Naga does not consider it beneath dignity to engage in manual labour.
- There are no glaring inequalities of income though a class of prosperous contractors is gradually emerging.
- The level of consumption of material goods is less than in the plains.

These factors should contribute to reasoned development in Nagaland. The State will have to stand on its own feet and raise its own revenue. An organised propaganda will also have to be made to encourage savings and investment. The NEPED venture appears to be a good beginning in this regard.

## 6. EVOLUTION

The social evolution of the Naga society from the ethnic tribal community of Headhunters to the modern society of today, just over the span of about 200 years is interesting. It shows the tenacity and adaptability of this unique community generally identified as a hostile society.

The arrival of Christian missionaries in Nagaland in 1839 transformed Naga history. The conversion of the Nagas to Christianity was the beginning of many changes in Nagaland. Rev. Miles Bronson was the first missionary to the Nagas who came to Namsang, a Naga village in 1839 and started the first school for the Nagas. These were the first efforts to teach the Nagas how to read and write.

The progress of Christianity in Nagaland in the 19<sup>th</sup> century was very slow as the attitude of Nagas towards the missionaries was hostile in the beginning. Those who were converted to Christianity were persecuted by their clan and sometimes by the whole village. But the social activities of the missionaries such as medical care and formal education ultimately succeeded in transforming the people. The Nagas who believed in a number of spirits and elaborate rituals responded to the concept of one god and the simplicity and logic of the new religion. The so-called glory that the Nagas derived by hunting the heads of their fellow men was replaced by a zeal for service to humanity. Christianity has been the single most dynamic factor in modernising Naga society. It opened the doors for the Nagas to think in a global context and brought them into the fold of a world family.

The first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century was an age of renaissance for the Nagas. They experienced great social and political change. From centuries of isolation, the Nagas suddenly woke up to face a world that was fast changing. This traumatic experience of change resulted in a cultural shock. For the first time, the tribes produced university graduates, doctors, engineers and political thinkers. Western ideas and western religion, western music and philosophies began to influence the Naga world outlook. There were cries for greater and nobler things. Many of these factors were to lead the Nagas into a new era.

Fig. 3 – Evolving Nagas



The Nagas became more aware of their common ethnic identity. They realised the importance of unity. Beginnings were made to delink themselves from the tribalism of the past. This led to a new sense of nationalism. The first Pan-Naga organisation, known as the Naga Club was formed in 1918. In 1945, the last British Administrator of Nagaland, Sir Charles Pawsey established an institution called Naga Hills District Tribal Council. The representative of the tribes changed this to Naga National Council (NNC) in 1946. Eventually, NNC emerged as the only political organisation in Nagaland. Although its original aim was to foster the welfare and social aspirations of the Nagas, it focussed for the solidarity of all the Nagas and to achieve their political aspirations. The major conflict developed when the British left giving independence to India on the 15<sup>th</sup> August 1947. The NNC declared its separate independence, started a political struggle and in 1956 formed the Federal Government of Nagaland having its own army known as Naga Army. This created a period of turmoil and a reign of terror as an undeclared war was waged between the Indian Army and the Naga Army. As a result of this war, the innocent Naga people suffered the most. In 1957, a group of Nagas formed an organisation called the Naga People's Convention to bring an end to this war and bloodshed and to search for a solution to the political problems of the Nagas. The several negotiations led to the 16 Point Agreement, and on the 1<sup>st</sup> December 1963 the state of Nagaland was formed. However, the underground struggle for an independent Nagaland is still continued which has resulted in the incidence of insurgency in Nagaland.

The economic growth of the Naga society may not be satisfactory in comparison with the other states; however, the astonishing growth in the literacy rate is commendable. More so when one considers that the majority of this population lives in rural areas. A good number of Naga youth, including girls is going out for higher education in the professional fields of medicine, engineering, architecture etc. Also striking is the transformation from the traditional militancy to the present tolerant culture. The adaptation of the ancient democratic administrative practices into the present day democratic political system through the network of Village Councils is also interesting and educative. The dress code of Nagas has gone through a drastic change. Today urban Nagas, both men and women wear western attire. English has been declared as official language of Nagaland. The traditional dresses and jewellery has been transformed into modern fashion designs. However, during this fast social evolution of the urban Naga society, the ethnic ethos has still remained intact in rural areas. The tribal languages are dialects and do not have scripts. They are used in verbal communications everywhere and they bring unity among Naga communities. That is the major asset of Nagaland.

## CHAPTER – 3

### TOURISM IN NAGALAND

#### 1. TOURISM STATUS

Nagaland is one of the youngest states in the country. The location of the state in the northeast region of the country, isolated from the mainland India has brought in a few inherent problems. The entire region has remained neglected, backward and undeveloped. The socio-economic and infrastructure status is poor, causing unrest and frustration amongst the people, which resulted in a long-term insurgency in the entire northeast region. Nagaland has been under insurgency for over three decades and is going through a state of turmoil. As such the socio-economic development in general and the tourism development in particular has been lagging behind the other states for over 30 years. The attempts in the direction of development truly started 1997 onwards, after the Cease fire was enforced between the Govt. of India and NSCN (1<sup>st</sup> August 1997).

The status of tourism is reflected in the following statistical data of tourist visits in the Northeast and Nagaland (Source: Tourist Statistics – 2000, page 58-59, Dept. of Tourism, GOI):

Table No. 3: **ESTIMATED DOMESTIC & FOREIGN TOURIST VISITS (1998 –2000)**

Location	1998		1999		2000		Prop. to the total (%)	
	Dom.	For.	Dom.	For.	Dom.	For.	Dom.	For.
Northeast Region (7states except Sikkim)	529784	2909	567284	3570	1489112	11788	0.7	0.2
Nagaland	28890	116	21041	119	13272	451	0.0	0.0

Apart from poor infrastructure and communication facilities, entry formality is a major deterrent. There is also shortage of accommodation. Private entrepreneurs are not coming up for hotel business due to heavy capital investments and very slow or no returns. The state tourism department has created some tourist facilities with the state and central assistance; however the maintenance of this infrastructure has become a major problem. This has affected tourism adversely which has remained very local and decreased substantially.

## 2. TOURISM POTENTIAL

Nagaland is a mountainous state with interesting topography. Natural beauty in various forms is the major asset of Nagaland. Lush green vegetation having interesting flora and fauna, deep valleys with clean rivers, natural lakes, hill agriculture and pleasant climate throughout the year are unique natural features of Nagaland. Additionally, the ethnic tribal culture reflected through folk dances, music, festivals and handicrafts are major tourist attractions. Nagaland also has its own unique identities reflected through mystic culture, ethnic traditions, hospitable people, fast social evolution of the urban Naga society, high literacy rate, interesting and indigenous architecture, class / caste less and self-sufficient society and beggar free urban areas. The unique geographical location and long international boundary with Myanmar could be another tourist feature.

It is quite clear that Nagaland has tremendous and quite unique tourism potential. This could be tapped mainly through the concept of Eco-tourism. Nature/wildlife tourism, Adventure tourism, Cultural/heritage tourism, Agriculture tourism, Leisure tourism, International Border tourism could be some special tourist packages.

## 3. PEOPLE'S OUTLOOK TOWARDS TOURISM

Naga society is a sociable and hospitable community.. Service oriented and democratic culture is reflected in their traditional systems, which have been continued through the network of village councils and voluntary organisations. The education has broadened the outlook of the people and new concepts are not only accepted but also evolved in an innovative way. Many village communities have come forward on their own and developed Tourist facilities with a traditional and rustic character. Traditional festivals, dresses and dances are being revived to attract outsiders and maintain Naga identity. Communities have realised the environmental and ecological problems caused by traditional jhoom cultivation and they are adapting to new and innovative agricultural system. Many villages have declared their natural surroundings as sanctuaries and banned hunting. This is a revolution and the Nagas are proud of it. People's outlook towards tourism is sympathetic and will be full of enthusiasm. In fact, community participation in tourism development has already started in Nagaland and will be a great success in future.

## 4. GOVERNMENT'S OUTLOOK TOWARDS TOURISM

Tourism was a late starter in Nagaland. Tourism had a subordinate status prior to 1981 in Nagaland when it was a part of the Department of Information and Public Relations. Since 1981, the Department of Tourism has been looking after the activities of tourism development in the state. However, insurgency and turbulent socio-political situation in the state for over two decades adversely affected any efforts of the department resulting in negligible tourism

in the state. The state government has realised the importance of tourism development as a support to cultural and socio-economic development of the state. Under the State Industrial Policy of Nagaland – 2000, Tourism has been accorded the status of ‘Priority Sector’. Tourism activities have been made eligible for all benefits and subsidies to the industry. Financial assistance for private tourism projects is being organised through various finance corporations. The efforts for privatisation of government infrastructure are also going on. However there have been no responses till now.

The government has given the thrust on the creation of basic infrastructure and amenities required for tourists. This has been done mainly through the assistance provided by the central government.

The Department of Tourism, Govt. of India, under the ministry of Tourism and Culture has been providing liberal financial and technical support for the tourism development in the state based on the projects received from the states.

Additionally, a special plan outlay has been provided under the ninth plan since the year 2000-2001 for the tourism development in the northeast states to the tune of lump sum 10% of the overall budget. This is a conscious and sympathetic attempt for the socio-economical upliftment of the north-eastern states through the upcoming tourism industry.

In general, the outlook of the state government towards the tourism development is of hesitance for now. This must change into the attitude of enthusiasm. However, the state will be dependent on the central assistance for a few years.

## 5. PRESENT BUDGET AND ECONOMICS OF TOURISM DEVELOPMENT

The main sources of finances for the tourism development in the state are from the normal annual budget of the state and the central financial assistance for the definite projects.

Table No. 4: State budget for the tourism development for the years 1999-2000 to 2002-2003 (Source: Dept. of Tourism, Nagaland):

YEAR	AMOUNT IN RS. LAKHS
1999 – 2000	329.39
2000 – 2001	378.34
2001 - 2002	390.67
2002 – 2003	360.94

The bulk of this budgeted amount goes on staff salaries. A detailed statement of the state budget allocation for the last ten years is at appendix – e.

The Department of Tourism collects revenue from the room rents and food costs at the tourist infrastructure run by the department. The revenue earnings of the Department of tourism during the last two years were Rs. 26.78 lakhs only as reported in the State Tourism Policy - 2001. The statement showing earnings for the last ten years is at appendix – f.

The rates fixed by the department for the amenities provided by them are very reasonable and are based on the market situation. This rationale looks fine since the local tourists are using the amenities regularly.

The state entirely depends on the central assistance for the creation of tourism infrastructure.

The following statement will give an idea of the assistance provided to the state from 1998-99 to 2000-01 (Source: Tourist Statistics, 2000, Page 117, Dept. of Tourism, GOI):

Table No. 5: STATEMENT SHOWING THE PROJECTS / AMOUNT SANCTIONED DURING 1998-99 TO 2000-2001 (Rs. In Lakhs)

State	1998-1999			1999-2000			2000-2001		
	No. of projects	Amt. Sancd.	Amt. Reled.	No. of projects	Amt. Sancd.	Amt. Reled.	No. of projects	Amt. Sancd.	Amt. Reled.
Nagaland	11	230.54	97.60	16	302.90	179.89	8	156.53	53.04

Additionally, a special plan outlay was provided under the ninth plan from the year 2000-2001 for the tourism development in the northeast states to the tune of lump sum 10% of the overall budget (Source: Tourist Statistics, 2000, Page 113-115, Dept. of Tourism, GOI):

2000-2001 - B.E. Rs. 13.50 Crores      R.E. Rs. 12.50 Crores  
 2001-2002 - B.E. Rs. 14.80 Crores

Table No. 6: The break up of this allocation is as under:

Sr.No.	Item	Rs in crores
1	Tourist Infrastructure (Revenue)	Rs. 1.00
2	Tourist Information & Publicity (Revenue)	Rs. 3.00
3	Computerisation & Information Technology (Revenue)	Rs. 1.00
4	Training (Revenue)	Rs. 1.00
5	Tourist Infrastructure (Capital)	Rs. 8.80
	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>Rs. 14.80</b>

At present, the Department of Tourism, Nagaland is carrying on its tourism development activities on the dependent economy. It is not able to meet the recurring expenditure through revenue generation. It will be difficult to continue this way in the long run, when major costs for the renovation / repairs of the existing infrastructure will crop up.

## 6. SUSTAINABILITY

In the present scenario, the state government's outlook towards the tourism development is of total dependence on central assistance. There are proposed plans for privatisation but the possibility of their success looks bleak. Considering the external adverse factors of complex nature, which are beyond the control of the state government, it is unlikely that the tourism development in the state can be self-sustaining in the near future.

However looking at the bright tourism potential, possible enthusiasm of the state government and the expected rise in the tourist arrival, it looks quite possible to make the tourism in the state sustainable in a decade. It will require futuristic vision, conscious and planned efforts at all levels and a disciplined action plan and implementation strategy. In the meanwhile, sympathetic approach of the central government will be required to stabilise the socio-political situation in the Northeast followed by overall infrastructure development in the region.

## CHAPTER – 4

### BASIC TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE IN NAGALAND

#### 1. COMMUNICATION NETWORK

##### a. International

At present, there is no direct international communication network to Nagaland. There is no road connecting to Myanmar.

For all international tourists, the nearest airport is Kolkata (West Bengal).

##### b. National

By Air: Dimapur Airport (approx. 74 Kms from Kohima, the capital of Nagaland), connected via Kolkata (West Bengal) and Jorhat (Assam). Other airports in the Northeast region are Guwahati and Dibrugarh (Assam), Imphal (Manipur) which have road transport connections to Nagaland.

By Train: Dimapur is the only railhead in Nagaland and is on the main line of North-eastern Frontier Railway connecting Kolkata & New Jalpaiguri (West Bengal), Guwahati & Dibrugarh (Assam). The other nearest stations for passenger trains are Furkating, Jorhat, Mariani, Simalguri, Sonari (Assam), which have road transport connection to Nagaland. There is a meter gauge connection from Simalguri (Assam) to Naganimora in Mon district of Nagaland. However there are no passenger trains on this line.

By Road: NH – 39 connects Nagaland via Dimapur and Kohima to Guwahati/Jorhat (Assam) and Imphal (Manipur). NH – 61 connects Nagaland via Tuli, Mokokchung, Wokha, Kohima, to Janji (Assam). There are further highway connections to West Bengal and other parts of India. Private and state transport buses, private taxis (Tata Sumo jeeps) regularly operate on these roads.

##### c. Regional

Northeast region is connected to Dimapur and Kohima in Nagaland by road via Guwahati (Assam), Imphal (Manipur), Shillong (Meghalaya), Itanagar (Arunachal Pradesh). Private and state transport buses operate on these routes.

##### d. State

Private and state transport buses connect all the district places by road. Buses and Taxis (unmetered) operate in most of the district HQs and the surrounding region for local travel.

## 2. TELECOMMUNICATION NETWORK

Telephone network with ISD, STD facilities is available only at a few district HQs. Local network is remotely available in some regions. The connectivity is very poor.

Telegraph, Telex, Trunk, Phonogram etc. services are available at the Post Offices at the major district HQs. Postal services and Courier services are also available from major district HQs, however the service is very slow.

## 3. INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY

Internet network is available only in the major cities of Kohima and Dimapur. The connectivity is very poor.

There is an All India Radio station and also Doordarshan Kendra at Kohima, which broadcasts regular programmes.

Satellite cable TV Network is available in the major district HQs.

The major news agencies like PTI and UNI have correspondents at Kohima.

There are about 8 daily newspapers and 5 news magazines (English) published at Kohima and Dimapur.

## 4. ENTRY PERMIT OFFICES

Inner Line permits (ILP) for Indian tourists are issued through the Dy. Resident Commissioners/Assistant Resident Commissioner/Dy. Commissioner, Nagaland at their offices in New Delhi, Kolkata, Guwahati, Shillong, Dimapur, Kohima and Mokokchung.

Restricted Area Permits (RAP) for foreign tourists are issued by the Ministry of Home Affairs, Govt. of India, New Delhi, Foreigners' Regional Registration Offices at Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai and Mumbai, all Indian Missions abroad and Home Commissioner/Resident Commissioner, Nagaland at their offices in Kohima and New Delhi.

## 5. TOURISM DEPARTMENT

The office of the Director, Department of Tourism, Nagaland is located at Kohima. Tourist information centres are also located at the Tourist Lodge, Dimapur and Nagaland House, Kolkata.

The Liaison Officers at Nagaland House at New Delhi also provides tourist information.

## 6. NETWORK OF INFORMATION CENTRES

The tourism information is available at the Office to the Director, Kohima and also at the other centres at Dimapur, Kolkata and New Delhi.

However, there is no networking amongst these offices and all the bookings etc. will have to be done through the main office at Kohima.

The contacts with the main office at Kohima could be made through phones, fax, post, courier etc. This office is not connected through Internet.

## 7. ACCOMMODATION FACILITIES

The Department of Tourism, Nagaland has functional tourist facilities at 3 destinations (Kohima, Dimapur, Mokokchung) all over Nagaland. They have reasonable good capacity of rooms / beds (Appendix – k).

Fig. 4 – Tourist Lodge, Kohima:



There are about 15 private hotels in Kohima with a total capacity of about 250 rooms having 460 beds. There are private hotels at Dimapur and also at other towns/villages in Nagaland. (See appendix – h, Private Hotels)

Additionally, there are government guest / circuit houses at the district HQs and the Forest Rest Houses of the Forest Departments near the forest divisions / protected areas.

There are modest facilities provided by the Village Councils and the Church Authorities at a few places.

It is recommended that the Department of Tourism should maintain the record of all private accommodation in the State.

## 8. RESTAURANTS

The Department of Tourism has provided restaurant facility at the tourist facilities. They also have Cafeterias and Wayside Amenities at a few places.

There are many medium / small private restaurants in the major cities at the district HQs. There are several small restaurants / eateries along the National/State Highways, near the villages, particularly at the state entry/exit points.

Most of the restaurants serve simple non-vegetarian food.

There is total prohibition in Nagaland and liquor is not allowed.

## 9. BASIC SERVICES

### a. Water

Nagaland, in general has a shortage of drinking water supply due to the hilly terrain. Ground water table is low at most of the places. The major cities at district HQs have piped water supply from local reservoirs or tube wells. The other areas depend on the local tube wells, rivers and ponds.

### Sanitation / Garbage disposal

In general, public / community toilets and sanitary network is very poor even within the major cities.

Sanitary system in the cities is through local septic tanks and soak pits, wherein subsoil water is drained down the hill slopes.

In the villages, a few houses have septic tanks system. Otherwise sewage is generally drained down the hill slopes.

The situation is same for the garbage disposal. In major cities, the garbage is dumped on the outskirts in valleys / lowlands.

### b. Power

Nagaland is dependent on Assam for its power supply and the present status of power supply is much below the normal standards.

There are three Hydro Electric Projects in Nagaland, namely Dzuza Micro Hydel Project - Kohima, Doyang Hydro Project (75 MW) - Wokha, Likhimro Hydro Project (24 MW) – Tuensang. However, the power generation is much below the state requirement.

c. Market

The major market in Nagaland is at Dimapur and at the capital city of Kohima. The districts HQs have medium size markets. All villages have weekly markets and also petty shops.

However, major markets supplying/marketing all necessary goods are in Assam i.e. Golaghat, Jorhat, Dibrugarh, Silchar, Guwahati etc..

The state government has identified three places for International Trade Centres at Pangsha in Tuensang district, Longwai in Mon district and Awankhu in Phek district. The International Trade Centres on Myanmar border may open large avenue for trade.

d. Medical

There are no major public hospitals in Nagaland. However a 500 bedded Referral Hospital is under construction at Dimapur.

Kohima city has a few medium size medical centres. There are Primary Health Centres at village levels.

There is a small network of voluntary organisations working in the field of Community and Social Health.

Many Church establishments provide reasonable medical facilities

e. Banks

Two nationalised banks, State Bank of India and Vijaya Bank operate in Nagaland.

Additionally, there is a network of co-operative banks, well spread out at the district level.

However, there are no ATM centres. Credit card facilities are also not available.

f. Entertainment

There are a very few places for general entertainment, that too restricted to major cities. Kohima city has small video cinema halls, a few cultural centres and clubs. There are a few small gardens and playgrounds. The Forest Department has developed a small zoo at Kohima.

In general, sports and music/dance are major entertainments for the Nagas and any open ambience is used for this purpose. Ethnic festivals at different intervals are the main occasions of jubilation, apart from Christmas and New Year celebrations.

g. Security

The capital city of Kohima has police stations and police outposts. There is also a special Narcotic Cell.

The other district HQs also have fair network of police stations and outposts.

The presence of Army Cantonments, GREF establishments and BRF at regular intervals also bring in the feeling of security.

Incidence of insurgency and drug trafficking are major problems in Nagaland. Otherwise the general crime rate is low in Nagaland.

Fig. 5: Tuophema Resort, the villagers' initiative:



## CHAPTER – 5

### POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE FACTORS

1. NORTHEAST REGION (8 states – Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura, Mizoram, Manipur & Nagaland):

#### General **Negative Factors** of NE Region:

1. Insurgency
2. Isolated, Neglected & Backward region
3. Difficult / rugged terrain
4. Intermittent adverse climatic conditions, particularly in monsoon
5. Earthquake prone region
6. Inappropriate Time Zone
7. Poor communication infrastructure / connectivity to mainland and also within the NE states
8. Poor development infrastructure: power, roads, industry, transportation
9. Lack of higher / Professional education & research facilities
10. Jhoom cultivation causing degradation of natural resources
11. Lack of exposure to the outside world
12. Lack of professionalism in attitude and management
13. Lack of discipline
14. Lack of emergency medical facilities
15. Loss of ethnic culture especially in the hilly region

#### General **Positive Factors** of NE Region:

1. Wonderful Natural Beauty of Mountains and Rivers
2. Unique and endemic flora and fauna
3. Large percentage of land under forest cover
4. Low population density
5. Clean and unpolluted Environment
6. Closeness to five international boundaries – Nepal, Bhutan, China, Myanmar, Bangladesh
7. Peaceful cultural relationship with international communities of Myanmar and Bangladesh
8. Diversity of very charming ethnic cultures
9. Diversity of folk art forms particularly music and dances
10. Peaceful intermingling of diverse communities, faiths and cultures
11. Hospitality and warmth of people
12. Mysticism of the region creating awe and curiosity
13. Great potential for Eco-tourism and Adventure tourism
14. Unexplored region for tourism development

## 2. NAGALAND STATE:

### General **Negative Factors** of Nagaland:

1. Degradation of forests / wildlife
2. Fear of insurgency
3. Entry formalities i.e. ILP / RAP
4. Poor Connectivity to the other northeast states and mainland
5. Poor infrastructure of road / rail / air
6. Loss of ethnic culture in urban areas
7. Poor Water and Power supply
8. Fuel problem
9. Poor public transport system
10. Health Hazard – mosquitoes, excessive smoking and chewing of Pan/tobacco/gutkha etc. (Supreme Court order has banned this in public places)
11. Fear of Drug-trafficking
12. Over population/concentration in Dimapur and Kohima cities
13. Limitation in availability of decent vegetarian food
14. Non availability of any facilities in the late evenings and on Sundays

### General **Positive Factors** of Nagaland:

1. The land of wonderful scenic natural beauty
2. Exciting topography of hill ranges and deep valleys
3. Pleasant and moderate climate throughout the year
4. Unique geographical location within the transition zone of tropical and temperate ecosystems
5. Unique flora and fauna
6. Ethnic tribal traditions, rituals, dances etc. creating curiosity for outsiders
7. Closeness to the international boundary of Myanmar
8. Unique terrace agriculture
9. Innovative NEPED project
10. High literacy rate
11. Warm, hospitable, sociable, happy and self-reliant people
12. Strong philosophy of democratic and participatory approach
13. Unique hill architecture
14. Low crime rate
15. Beggar free ambience even in the urban areas
16. Clean and pollution free environment
17. Organic agriculture and horticulture
18. Fast changing society with a mix of modernity and tradition

## CHAPTER – 6

### PROPOSED TOURISM POLICY

#### 1. GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR THE NORTHEAST REGION:

The broad approach for the tourism development in the Northeast should be regional (incorporating Indian states and neighbouring countries) rather than local. The unique geography of the region and its ecological character demands this concept. Individual states in the Northeast do have their own specific identity, which should reflect in their detailed local proposals.

The Tourism Development in the Northeast region will depend on integrated approach, involving various government departments, private entrepreneurs, voluntary organisations and local community. The broad and general recommendations revolve around the unified strategy of tourism development for the Northeast and specific development proposals essential and complementing tourism development in the region. This approach will also help in evolving local people's perception towards tourism development as a strong tool for socio-economic upliftment, with self-dependence and without environmental destruction of the region.

Most of these recommendations will fall outside the state government's purview. It will be the responsibility of the Central Government to augment these services for these neglected states. However, the state governments need to understand the importance of these basic requirements for the overall development of the states, and should keep no stone unturned in their efforts of constant follow up, persuasion and also collaboration with the central government / funding agencies etc. These should be aggressively and diplomatically handled by the state government on all fronts, political, bureaucratic, social and economical at regional, national and international levels.

#### a. **Communication Network – road, rail, air, phones, internet:**

The status of the basic communication network in the region is much below the minimum standards. The tourism development in the region will heavily depend on the immediate improvement in this infrastructure within the next five years. A few urgent measures are as under:

**ROADS:** The roads are the most important sector in the communication network since they are used by maximum number of people. The GREF is doing excellent work of the road development in the region. At present they are concentrating on the National

Highways. Special efforts should be made to take corrective actions at known points of regular disruption during the monsoon. Generally these are caused by landslides or floods in this difficult mountainous terrain. (e.g. Sonpur near Silchar on Guwahati – Shillong – Silchar National Highway)

The state highways interconnecting different states in the region should be taken up for the development immediately. Additionally, the other minor roads leading to various tourism destinations should also be taken up for development and maintenance.

Diplomatic efforts should be strengthened for the approvals and development of the international roads linking the neighbouring countries. The implementation of the proposed Transport Corridor linking the countries in the Southeast Asia should be expedited. This will be a socio-economic boon for the Northeast India.

This should be complemented with efficient, quality passenger transport service under the public and private sector. The basic passenger facilities like clean, hygienic and decent rest rooms with toilets, drinking water fountains and restaurants should be provided at the terminal points and also at regular intervals along the National Highways. The private taxi service should also be made available for the tourists. The public transport service should be effectively monitored and controlled by the government authorities.

**RAILWAY:** Present railway infrastructure in the region is just bear minimum. It does not even connect to all the states in the region. All lines are not broad gauged lines. The quality and frequency of trains is very low. The basic infrastructure and facilities for passengers at the railway stations are also very poor. This is a neglected sector of the Indian Railways and need immediate attention since this is the most popular travel mode for all categories of passengers. This mode also works as a very good alternative in case of road blockages etc. due to climatic adversities in this rugged region.

The railways are also very popular amongst the tourists; particularly international tourists and a special tourist railway route could also be considered.

Additionally, a possibility of international connectivity may also be attempted, particularly to Myanmar and Bangladesh.

**AIR:** Northeast is the most neglected sector of the country for air travel. The entry point is Kolkata airport from where all the flights to the northeast embark. Presently, there is only one direct link (Delhi) to the mainland other than Kolkata. Recently, one International flight has been introduced to Bangkok from Guwahati. The flights are very irregular, generally cancelled for various reasons. The airports are

primitive and landings cannot take place during the slightly inclement weather or at nights. The flight schedules and frequencies are not satisfactory.

This requires a total revolutionary thinking. Interstate connectivity must be planned on a priority basis. Up gradation of all airports should be done urgently. Guwahati airport should be made international as soon as possible and more direct national connections should be introduced.

**PHONES:** The entire country has been going through the telecommunication revolution, except the Northeast. Even local telephone service is not available in many areas. The connectivity is very poor wherever the service is presently available.

This requires to be resolved on a priority basis. The ISD / STD / FAX and local service must be made available at all towns and major villages along the highways. The availability of public telephone booths can also provide employment opportunity to many local youths / women and physically challenged people. This has become a basic need for any development proposal and more particularly for tourism.

**INTERNET:** Internet service has become the basic amenity since the world entered in the 3<sup>rd</sup> millennium. Every business needs this service to compete in the world / national market. This service is almost non-existent even in the major cities in the Northeast.

This service also needs to be provided on a high priority basis, if the Northeast has to be developed. The tourism sector cannot develop and compete with the other states unless this facility is available urgently.

**b. Biosphere Reserve – Ecological Land-Use Policy for NE:**

The Northeast India has been identified as one of the most important Biodiversity Hot Spots in the world and has been included in the Red Data Book of the IUCN. It is one of the richest phytogeographic regions in the country. The entire Northeast Region must be considered as the country's major Biosphere Reserve and any development in this region has to be planned with a very careful, environmentally sensitive and responsible approach. All development will strictly follow the norms enlisted by the Ministry of Environment and Forests under various Acts and also those of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). There should be a Regional Master Plan for the Northeast based on the Ecological Land-Use Policy. (See Appendix-p)

A special emphasis should be given to conserve the entire Brahmaputra River Valley along with the tributaries and catchment area as a special Eco-sensitive Zone

The Tourism Policy for the entire region should also revolve around this basic concept.

**c. Entry formalities:**

At present, except for Sikkim, Assam, Meghalaya and Tripura entry to all the other states is restricted even for Indian tourists. This is a major deterrent for tourism in the region.

The entry permit requirements for the Indian tourists should be abolished immediately.

The entry permit formalities for the foreign tourists should be simplified immediately and abolished in due course.

**d. Documentation and research to create user-friendly database of tribal culture of NE – art, music, dance, food, textiles etc.:**

There is tremendous interest amongst the tourists in the ethnic tribal culture of the Northeast. However, not much authentic literature is available. Various government organisations and Universities have been carrying on research in these fields over the years and the documentation and papers have remained locked into the cabinets of these offices. Thus holistic documentation of the cultural heritage of the Northeast is non-existent today.

The Tourism Development in the Northeast Region is closely linked with the rich and diverse cultural heritage of more than 200 ethno-linguistic communities of the region. This offers great opportunity for promoting Cultural & Heritage Tourism, which has remained unexplored. The detailed and holistic will provide the base to plan an integrated strategy to develop this parameter for the entire region and also for the individual states of the region. There should be a coordinated effort from the Department of Tourism to create the database and make it available in a user-friendly and presentable form. The Northeast Zone Cultural Centre (NEZCC) situated at Dimapur in Nagaland and various Tribal Research Institutes in different states can play a key role in this documentation exercise.

A time bound Action Plan needs to be drawn for this activity since the development action for Cultural & Heritage Tourism will greatly depend on this documentation. This exercise should commence immediately and should be implemented in a scientific and professional manner. The activity will involve:

- 1) Literature study & compilation of the existing information
- 2) Systematic fieldwork to update this information
- 3) Collection of additional data and filling in the gaps
- 4) Scientific analysis of the entire data

- 5) Synthesis and interpretation of the data in an appropriate context
- 6) Presentation of the entire documentation in a user-friendly manner
- 7) Interpretation of the unique features from this documentation for the purpose of development of Cultural & Heritage Tourism in the Northeast Region and also in individual states
- 8) Involvement of local people in the strategy planning and ensuring their participation in the implementation
- 9) Preparation of the Master Plan for the development of Cultural & Heritage Tourism for the Northeast region through a professional consultant
- 10) Preparation of detailed Project Plans for individual states through professional consultants
- 11) Implementation of the Projects through professional agencies

The first step towards this achievement is the process of Documentation, which should commence as soon as possible. It is a complex and time consuming exercise and will require a multi-disciplinary team of professionals. This exercise could be a part of the implementation of the Perspective Plan and we will make a state wise budget provision for this activity.

**e. Replacement of jhoom by appropriate forestry / horticulture or other alternatives:**

The natural forests and ecosystems of the Northeast have been destroyed because of one main reason i.e. the practice of jhoom cultivation by the locals. This needs to be replaced on a priority basis by creating alternate opportunities for the local farmers.

This requires socio-economical and ecological approach and the Forest department and the local voluntary organisations must take lead to revert the present situation. The project 'NEPED' in Nagaland may be used as a guideline for the other regions.

**f. Computerisation/Internet networking of all basic services:**

The entire world has become one small community because of computer and Internet technology. All economic and development endeavours have become very efficient and competitive. Any imitative cannot succeed today without effective and appropriate use of computer and Internet technology.

Particularly for the Northeast region, which is geographical isolated from the mainland India, it will be of tremendous advantage to make use of these modern facilities for effective and efficient communication and service. All basic services e.g. Bus/Railway/Air bookings, Tourist

Destination bookings, regional information network etc. should be made available as online service, with immediate effect.

**g. International Research Projects (Tourism, Trade, Adventure, Ecology, Nature) with the adjoining and other nations:**

The Northeast region is lacking in international exposure. There are hardly any international collaborative projects in development / research fields. This one area must be projected with emphasis, since it can bring in innovative technological and scientific approach to various facets of development strategy and also could attract large funding. Our students and local communities could also gain intellectually through such an exposure.

These efforts need to be coordinated through a single agency dealing with international research / development collaboration and emphasis could be given to the fields of Ecology, Nature, Adventure and Heritage Tourism, Trade etc. which has regional significance. The extra efforts may be made to begin such collaboration with the neighbouring countries.

**h. Eco-tourism policy of entire NE region:**

The Tourism Policy for the entire Northeast Region should be based on the concept of Eco-tourism with very wide parameters. The eco-tourism should not just mean nature tourism, but also should consider environmental / Heritage conservation and education as a core feature.

**i. Publicity campaign with main emphasis on Nature & Culture:**

Entire Northeast region need to be showcased positively with a well-designed and aggressive publicity campaign. It is a major need for the tourism development of the region. The emphasis of the campaign should be on Nature and Culture. These are two very positive aspects of the Northeast and people from all over the world will be interested to visit the region, if these aspects are highlighted.

Such positive publicity will also counter the negative image of the Northeast created because of insurgency incidents.

This should be carried out through all possible media e.g. newspapers, magazines, radio, TV, films, Internet etc. and through various forms of journalism (feature articles, tourism articles) and sports / glamour / cultural events, educational / religious / political gatherings etc.

**j. Major Institutes for tourism, adventure, defence, forests & wildlife etc.:**

The Northeast region has specific potential for unique sectors like Tourism, Adventure, Defence and Forests & Wildlife. These could be exploited to create interest amongst the people while providing them advanced training in these fields, which could create better opportunities, particularly for the local youth.

Such Institutes can also create international interest. A few such examples are Nehru Institute of Mountaineering (NIM) at Uttar Kashi in Uttaranchal, Himalayan Mountaineering Institute (HMI) at Darjeeling in West Bengal, Central Institute of Jungle Warfare (CIJW) in Mizoram, Wildlife Institute of India (WII) at Dehradun in Uttaranchal.

**k. Cultural Centres at Indian metro cities and major international cities:**

Northeast Cultural Centres, as a joint effort of all eight states of the region, could be an excellent avenue to project Northeast in a positive way to the other Indian states and also to international community. These centres could act as ambassadors of the Northeast region to promote tourism, education, culture, arts and also to provide opportunities to the youth from Northeast Region to focus themselves in front of the world. They can also function as Socio-economic Centres for the Northeast.

This could be initiated in the South Indian cities of Bangalore and Chennai, since majority of youth from the Northeast prefer these cities for higher education. These Cultural Centres could be designed to function on the lines of British Council or Maxmueller Bhawan in India.

**l. Major Service Sector – Power, Water, Health, Education:**

The Northeast Region has remained socio-economically backward mainly because of very weak Service Sector. The standard of major basic services like Power, Water, Health, Education is much below the satisfactory level. These need to be enhanced with a concentrated effort within a short span if we wish to achieve the overall development growth in the Northeast in the next five years.

This need not depend on the central assistance. The centralised development body like Northeast Council could achieve this with a strong persuasion and enthusiastic collaboration from the state governments / voluntary organisations. Good and well-designed proposals with a positive approach could generate their own funds or international funds.

## 2. GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR NAGALAND:

The general recommendations are based on a broad approach considering the future time frame of 20 years for the tourism development in the State. Since Nature is the main asset of the state, the tourism policy will have strong emphasis on Eco-tourism and entire planning strategy will be based on the eco-sensitive principles of Environmental Design. All development will strictly follow the norms enlisted by the Ministry of Environment and Forests under various Acts and also those of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN). The state may not have control over the implementation of the recommendations for the region, since that will be under the purview of the Central government and NEC. However, the state must make concerted efforts and follow up with these agencies for quick redressal of these recommendations. This will require sustained efforts, persuasion, enthusiasm and patience on the part of state officials. It must be noted that the success of the tourism development in the state will largely depend on the timely implementation of the regional infrastructure.

The strategy is four fold:

- i. Regional (NE) infrastructure development necessary for the tourism development of the state. This has been enumerated in the section-1 above.
- ii. General infrastructure development in the state necessary for the tourism development. This is enumerated in this section-2.
- iii. Development of existing / proposed tourism projects which have been already worked out by the Department of Tourism. This is enumerated in the section-3 hereunder.
- iv. Development of new unique and specific Tourism Projects and Tourism Circuits (state, interstate and international). This has been enumerated in the sections-4 & 5 hereunder.

General Infrastructure Development in the State:

### a. **Roads & Transport, Railway, Air:**

The major roads in the state are being designed and maintained by the GREF / BRO. These are generally in a satisfactory condition. However the condition of the other roads is very poor. These need to be upgraded by the PWD immediately. Priority must be given to the roads leading to the tourist destinations. Many new roads also need to be planned and developed specifically to provide access to the new tourist destinations. These will be also useful to provide alternate access / circuits for smooth connectivity of nearby destinations.

Along with the development of roads, it will be very useful to develop the road landscaping, particularly on the roads leading to the tourist spots. This includes roadside plantation of trees and shrubs with a specific concept and aesthetic value, creation of shelters, viewpoints

and select appropriate locations for interesting signage and graphic designs. This will have educational and publicity value in addition to functionality. This can be carried out in close collaboration with the GREF since they have specific budget provisions for some of these features.

The improvement of interstate and local public transport system is of utmost importance. This needs up-gradation in the quality of buses, service, frequency and also the basic tourist facilities at the bus stands. The special tourist buses could be provided in the public/private sector at special rates, once the tourist traffic increases. This will avoid conflict with local passengers. This can be worked out by the Tourism Dept. in co-ordination with the state/private operators. The Tourism Dept. may have its own minimum transport facilities like jeeps, mini buses etc. mainly for the conducted tours for a group of tourists. However, the financial sustainability of such arrangement needs to be carefully worked out.

At present, there is private taxi service between Dimapur, Kohima and Imphal (Manipur). There is also local taxi service in the major cities of Nagaland. However, this service needs to be improved with regular control and monitoring by the government. The rates should be standardised and local taxi service must have meters. This removes any confusion/doubts in the mind of a tourist and creates a comfortable feeling.

Railway: Presently, the only railhead at Dimapur connects the regions in south Nagaland. There is an additional track for goods service between Simulguri (Assam) and Naganimora in Mon district of north Nagaland. Passengers have to get down at Dimapur and then travel by road. Since the railway is the most popular and economical mode of transport for tourists, this needs to be upgraded soon. The passenger service should be started upto Naganimora on an urgent basis. This line should be extended up to Mon, Mokokchung, Tuensang possibly within the next 10 years.

Air: The Dimapur airport is at the southwest corner of Nagaland state and quite at a distance from the major district HQs including the capital city of Kohima, which is at a distance of 74 Kms. Even this airport is much below the normal standards. The airport needs immediate up-gradation in terms all weather and night landing facilities, communication services, transit accommodation facility etc. The frequency of services and interstate (Northeast) connectivity needs to be improved. The efficient transport system like prepaid bus or taxi should be made available urgently since the distances to other cities are considerable. A possibility of developing a new airport at a more central location could be investigated.

There could be a joint effort by the Tourism Department and the Railway/Air/Road transport authorities to develop Yatri Niwas like transit accommodation facilities at the terminals. Nagaland Tourism has a tourist lodge at Dimapur airport, which has poor occupancy. This could be linked to the airport through Indian Airlines/Airport Authority to be used as a transit facility.

**b. Modern Tourist Information Centres:**

The tourists feel most comfortable if the efficient information service is available at the entry points. At present, such facility is not available for Nagaland. The modern Tourist Information Centres should be installed at all the entry points i.e. airports at Dimapur, Jorhat, Dibrugarh, Imphal; railway stations at Dimapur, Guwahati, Golaghat, Jorhat etc.; bus terminals. These Tourist Information Centres should be well equipped with all modern communication facilities (phone, fax, internet etc.) and should have computerised services. All tourist publications / books / brochures and maps should be available at these centres. The tourists should be able to book their accommodation and travel from these centres and such information should be easily available. These centres could be an employment opportunity mainly for women and youth.

**c. Computerisation of Tourism Services:**

Computerisation and Internet networking have become essential components of any business and service-oriented establishments. The tourism sector is a very competitive sector and could be successful only through efficiency and prompt service. The Nagaland Tourism is lagging behind in this aspect and this up-gradation of the department is of utmost urgency. The computerisation of the office services should be linked to the information & booking/reservation networking of all the facilities at various centres all over the country/world. Online reservation/booking facility through credit cards etc. should be made available to the tourists. The efficient website of the Tourism Department will be a good tool to achieve this.

**d. Booking Agents:**

The efficient service in any business sector depends on wider network, either through Internet or through well-distributed competent agents. For a state like Nagaland, which has location obstacle, must organise for both these networks for showcasing itself to the world. The Nagaland Tourism should start immediately in this direction by establishing Booking Agents in the major cities in the country e.g. Kolkata, New Delhi, Mumbai, Chennai, Bangalore and Hyderabad. The empanelment of such agents should be done on a selective basis and good incentives should be offered for better response. This system is more sustainable since this does not involve the department in any

investments or establishments. However, Internet connectivity with such agents will improve the efficiency of tourist attraction to Nagaland. The system of agents has been popular and effective in many business sectors.

**e. Professional Training of staff:**

Tourism industry has become a specialised sector today. It is a fast growing, labour incentive and competitive industry. The concepts in tourism sectors are also changing fast and one requires to be updated constantly. Unfortunately, this does not happen in the government sector easily, more so in the isolated and young state like Nagaland. The Department of Tourism, Nagaland is relatively young department. The senior officials have learnt the subject with experience. However, professional training in various aspects of tourism sector to the different categories of staff is of utmost importance. The exposure to the national and international scenario is also very important. This could be achieved by their participation in different seminars / workshops / short-term courses etc. Such training programmes could be organised in-house also to minimise the costs. The staff should be encouraged to improve their qualifications in this sector and incentives like increments/promotions etc. could be offered. All new staff must have tourism related professional qualifications. This will be very useful investment on part of the government.

**f. Target Tourist identification and appropriate strategy:**

The tourism development strategy needs thorough research and analysis of the past trends and existing scenario. Unfortunately, the department is not equipped for such exercise, nor they have a database. This basic research and data collection should start immediately. It is also of utmost importance to understand the principles of Eco-tourism since that will be the basic theme for Nagaland Tourism. Excessive tourism may look economically attractive but it will destroy the tourism potential due to degradation of the surrounding natural environment. This could happen with uncontrolled tourism. The carrying capacity of the infrastructure and also the tourism environment must be carefully assessed before starting the marketing strategy. The controlled approach will be the most sustainable strategy. In the meanwhile, we suggest a few target groups for immediate service e.g. Local (state), Regional (NE), Domestic (West Bengal, Orissa, Delhi, Maharashtra, South India), International (Bangladesh, Myanmar, Nepal, Bhutan, China). This choice is based on our analysis of the small tourist data collected by us and this could be modified based on the changing trends (See Appendix-----). Each of these target groups will require appropriate strategy for publicity, service and facilities. At present, the local and regional tourists are the most important users of the facilities. This group should be targeted with appropriate incentives in a big way for the first 2/3 years. This group

will not be affected by outside circumstances and there will not be big downward fluctuations in their traffic. These groups will help the stabilisation of the tourism business in the state and will allow the opportunity for further development of facilities to attract the other groups in the next 5/10 years. The publicity at local and regional level will help to achieve this target. Involvement of local voluntary organisations, educational institutions etc. could consolidate this effort. Educational and Cultural tours for larger groups could be big attractions for this sector. The investments pattern will also be low for these efforts.

**g. Tourism Clubs:**

As a part of tourism promotion at local and regional level, an idea of Tourism Clubs could be initiated in the schools and colleges from Nagaland and the Northeast Region. This could be on the line of Nature Club movement of the WWF-India. In a very short time, the tourism concept would reach the younger generation. The Tourism Department should become a nodal agency to promote, encourage and monitor this activity. The Clubs will be registered with the Tourism Department and they will be provided with tourism information, magazines, films etc. The schools/colleges will be encouraged to carry on these tourism related activities as extra-curricular activities of their institutions. The tours organised by the Clubs will get concessions from the Tourism Department. This activity can become very popular within a short time and it does not need large investments from the Tourism Department. This should be started in the state immediately.

**h. Marketing & Publicity:**

This requires professional approach and could depend on the basic concept of Eco-tourism. However, basic publicity has to be carried out through different media. Most important and attractive is the roadside signage and hoardings. They are functional and permanent. The strategy for the design of signage/hoardings has to be carefully planned. It must provide independent and unique identity to Nagaland Tourism. The punch lines, scripts and colour schemes are important factors to achieve quick and long-lasting results. This is relatively less expensive item. Additionally this should be complemented with usual outside publicity through regular newspaper and magazine articles, radio / TV programmes on the state and various interesting features and occasional sponsored advertisements. We do not recommend expensive advertisements in the initial period of ten years. Slow but steady and quality publicity will create permanent market for the state like Nagaland.

The marketing strategy will depend on the assessment of the carrying capacity of the tourism potential and also on the regular monitoring of the initial efforts for the tourism development. It will take a very long time for the tourism to really pick up in the Northeast, particularly because of infrastructure deficiencies and socio-political issues. Therefore, it does not look advisable to start very ambitious marketing strategies at this juncture. However simple marketing methods could be used to augment the existing facilities. The existing Wayside amenities and Restaurant are under utilised even though they are at strategic and excellent locations. The tourism department can tie up with the Department of Transport and private bus operators, so that these locations become regular lunch/tea halts. Appropriate incentives may be provided for this joint effort.

**i. Health Care:**

General Healthcare strategy specifically from the tourism point of view is very important. This is non-existent today. Nagaland has two major possible health problems for tourists i.e. Malaria and Gastro-enteritis. The concerted efforts are required for prevention of these problems at all tourist destinations. These could be tackled with following simple strategy:

- All tourist lodges should have mosquito control systems e.g. Mosquito nets in all bed rooms, mosquito nets on all windows/double shutter system for windows, provision of eco-friendly mosquito repellents, cleanliness of the surrounding environment like lowlands, open tanks, septic tanks and soak pits etc. which act as mosquito breeding places.
- Biological control of mosquitoes through the appropriate use of repellent plants in the landscape design, use of appropriate fish in the water bodies in the surrounding region etc.
- All tourist lodges must be equipped with efficient water purification plants. The regular maintenance of such plants is of utmost importance for their efficiency. This should be also made mandatory at all restaurants, at least those operated by the tourism department. Additionally, this should be complemented with the availability of bottled water of certified brands.
- All kitchens must have high standards of hygiene. The kitchens and restaurant must be kept absolutely clean. The equipment and raw material must be maintained in clean condition. The staff should follow strict disciplines of hygiene.
- All toilets must have high standard of hygiene and cleanliness.
- Intermittent and regular pest control with eco-friendly methods must be carried for the tourist premises and the surroundings.
- In general, awareness of high standard of cleanliness, hygiene and health care amongst the staff must be ensured with regular monitoring and intermittent campaigns.
- All tourist lodges must be equipped with first-aid facilities

**j. Joint Projects with the other Departments:**

The Tourism Department should not work in isolation. In fact, the tourism department should act as a co-ordinating agency to develop the tourism potential in the state in different interesting areas. This will help the Tourism Department to use its limited resources judiciously. There are other government departments like Forest, Archaeology, Tribal Development, Rural Development, Agriculture & Horticulture, Education, Sports etc. The activities and programmes of these departments could be designed to suit the tourism potential of the state and tourism department should give these inputs to these departments. Wildlife and Adventure tourism are the upcoming and very promising sectors and they could be effectively and sustainably developed as the joint projects and programmes. At present, there are no such attempts and this must be developed immediately since this is the most sensible and sustainable approach.

**k. Special Tourist facilities at the State entry / exit points:**

Entry and Exit points have a lot of importance to create identity for the State. The tourists get their first and lasting impressions at these points. These points are important for Nagaland, in the present circumstances where permits are required to enter the state. The tourists spend a lot of time at such points and it will be advisable to make their time at such places comfortable and pleasant. This could be achieved by creating Special Tourist Centres at these entry / exit points in co-ordination with the security authorities. These centres could provide basic tourist facilities, provide information and also play a major role in establishing the first warm contact and impression with the tourists. The design of such Centres should reflect the identity of the state.

**l. Privatisation Strategy:**

The role of the Tourism Department should be to develop the tourism potential in the state by creating infrastructure and developing tourist spots. It should get out of implementation process as early as possible. The privatisation of various facilities with different strategies makes the projects sustainable in a long run. However, in the present nascent stage, it may not be possible for the department to attract private entrepreneurs who could take risk and invest funds since the tourism market is unpredictable. The Tourism Department will have to prepare its own strategy of sustainability through economic/participatory/collaborative projects for the next ten years. At the same time efforts must be continued to involve the private participation in the creation of infrastructure, through attractive incentives and benefits. A few popular tourist spots could be offered on a BOT basis as an experiment.

**m. Barrier Free Design approach for physically challenged people:**

This is the most important modern concept and should be included in all the infrastructure designs for indoor and outdoor spaces. A concerted effort must be made to make the tourist spaces universal. Additionally, all tourist places must be made fully equipped with amenities like wheel chairs, walking sticks, umbrellas and also the first aid facilities. This concept is new and has to be insisted upon and handled very sensitively.

**n. Tourism Act & Heritage Act:**

Tourism Industry has a great potential to develop into a very strong socio-economic sector. This sector will have many facets and will cover a very large and complex area. It is necessary to envisage this factor at this preliminary stage in a state like Nagaland and cover many complex issues under the Tourism Act to develop, control and monitor various parameters of Tourism Industry in a systematic way. Introduction of such an Act at this stage will also allow the state to understand its finer issues and allow it to be evolved along with its progress. Many countries already have such Acts and even many Indian states are in a process of formulation of such a statutory provision. The state government should initiate this process, which will strengthen the tourism movement in the state.

The tourism development in Nagaland will follow the basic concept of Eco-tourism and Heritage tourism because of its strengths in these two sectors. It is imperative that any development under these two concepts has to be handled in a very careful and sensitive manner to make it sustainable. There are various acts already in existence both at the central and state level to take care of Environmental Conservation and the strategy could be to follow these acts strictly. However, there are no such centralised acts for Heritage Conservation. Nagaland has many heritage assets in different categories like culture, archaeology, religious places, ethnic villages, historical places, natural features, cantonments etc. Many of these are located in the fast developing urban centres and could get lost if this development is not monitored in this direction at this stage itself. Heritage Act is a necessity for tourism development and it should be enacted soon. There are many models available to follow (Mumbai, Delhi, Bangalore etc).

**o. Funding Avenues:**

The Tourism Department must try various funding avenues in a process to make the activity economically feasible and sustainable. All proposals / projects must be worked out like business proposals considering all possible projections. The state/central governments may provide limited assistance for the initial gestation period. However, a definite strategy has to be worked out for the long-term

maintenance of such facilities. The other funding avenues should be tapped. Various government departments and organisations provide specialise funding for specific projects related to their activities and tourism sector being a versatile sector could tap these resources. The Ministry of Environment and Forests finances projects related to Biodiversity, Wildlife, Plant Conservation etc., the Central Zoo Authority provides funds for zoo related projects, the department of Alternate Energy, Education etc. also provide similar financial assistance. There are many international organisations / universities which are interested in long term ecological research in the regions like Northeast. The tourist infrastructure could be also used for such complementary activities and made sustainable. Nagaland has potential to attract private investments in tourism sectors. However it will depend on the other factors adversely affecting the Northeast region. The state government has already identified tourism as an industry. Now it must begin to treat the tourism sector like a public sector industry. Tourism industry is likely to provide tremendous socio-economic benefits to the state with multiplier effects. It is a fast growing and non-polluting industry, most suitable for a state like Nagaland. The state government must invest/divert substantial funds in this sector to reap quick overall benefits.

### 3. GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS FOR THE EXISTING / PROPOSED PROJECTS:

The Tourism Department, Nagaland has developed substantial infrastructure in the state since its inception in 1981. The most of it is still lying in an incomplete and non-functional stage. There are a few projects which are under construction and a few which are in the pipeline awaiting approval from the Department of Tourism, Government of India. All these projects have been under the assistance from the central government. The state government budget provides for routine maintenance of this infrastructure. At present, the occupancy rate and effective revenue generation is quite low. It will be very difficult for the department to maintain the infrastructure in good condition. Even at the present stage, the infrastructure requires a lot of up gradation just to bring it up to the satisfactory standards.

We therefore recommend the strategy of stabilisation for the next five years. That will include:

- i. Complete all incomplete/under construction works of the approved projects
- ii. Obtain the approval for the projects in the pipeline awaiting sanction from the Department of Tourism, New Delhi; commence and complete those works as soon as possible
- iii. Do not apply for any more new, infrastructure projects
- iv. Carry out total up-gradation of the entire infrastructure to bring it to the excellent standard

- v. All efforts should be concentrated to identify and develop new and unique tourist spots and tourist circuits with very minimum basic amenities
- vi. Simultaneously, additional efforts should be focussed on effective publicity and marketing through innovative and professional approach

The above strategy may be further detailed out as under:

**a. Up-gradation of the existing infrastructure:**

The present status of the infrastructure is not satisfactory and requires immediate total overhauling. This will include work under structural, architectural, interior, services and landscape categories. This should be taken up as a single project and handled professionally. Piecemeal repair works will not achieve a desired result. A total master plan for this project needs to be worked out including the strategy for phased implementation so that a part of the infrastructure remains available for the use. This work should be taken up more seriously than even the new constructions. A thorough brainstorming should be carried out while deciding about the utilisation of the space for appropriate functions and also to decide material specifications, which should be functional, economical, maintenance free and aesthetic. Nagaland falls in the category of high seismic zone and maximum efforts must be made to see that the structural up-gradation takes care of earthquake resistance. The attention must be given to include all Healthcare measures to be incorporated at the construction/renovation stage itself. This should be made an integral part of the infrastructure. All the concepts of environmental design should be integrated in this master plan since Eco-tourism will be the basic theme of Nagaland Tourism. This investment will be a good saving in the long run, if carried out professionally and with integrated approach (See Appendices –q & r).

**b. Architectural face lifting with ethnic character:**

The above exercise of up-gradation should be complemented with another innovative attempt to change the façade of the present set up. Most of the present structures are designed as standardised building designs of PWD. They are functional but lack any character. The tourism sector needs innovative thinking in design of all products, and infrastructure should get priority in this direction. The architecture must reflect the ethnic character and identity of Nagaland/Northeast. This approach must be considered for all new designs, at the same time the existing structures could also be superficially modified to achieve such results.

**c. Landscape design:**

Nature is the most important feature of the Nagaland Tourism and as such it becomes imperative that the infrastructure provided for the purpose of tourism does not become eyesore but merges with the surrounding

landscape. Therefore, the landscape design of these tourist places becomes a very important factor. It must also be emphasised that the landscape design should follow ecological concept rather than beautification process.

**d. Up-gradation of existing transport facilities:**

The tourism department already possess some minimum transport facilities like jeeps and a mini bus. The utilisation of these facilities for the tourism purposes is very minimal. These vehicles require regular maintenance and they become a liability over the years if not put to proper use. The in-depth analysis of the utilisation and possible requirements must be carried out immediately to decide the strategy for such in-house facilities. The bear minimum vehicles should be kept for routine use. A joint collaborative strategy should be worked out with the State Transport Department and private entrepreneurs for utilisation of their vehicles for conducted tours etc. on a regular basis or whenever required. The department vehicles should be given a new look to provide special identity and tourism publicity.

**e. Publicity:**

The tourism publicity should be carried out with specific concept of Eco-tourism and through various methods. It must be carried out innovatively and economically. The care also must be taken to consider the infrastructure and its carrying capacity, before taking up the publicity in a big way. Subtle approach will be the best strategy at this juncture for Nagaland. Localised publicity could be best carried out through roadside signage and hoardings. This has to be designed with a definite theme and should be very attractive. It must provide the identity to Nagaland Tourism. Outside publicity can be carried out most economically through newspapers/magazine articles on the state and its interesting features. This should be a regular and sustained effort. Talented local journalists could be given some incentive to provide these inputs. Innovative programmes on Radio and TV is another effective strategy for far reaching publicity. This needs to be coordinated with some regular features on these media. Well-designed products and souvenirs make a subtle positive impact on tourism publicity. These are functional elements, which could become show windows of Nagaland Tourism. Some examples are backpacks, caps, T-shirts, stickers etc. The innovations in design will provide economical success to these products with minimum investment and will also achieve subtle but long lasting publicity. Information literature like brochures, posters and books is another excellent avenue for publicity. However, the theme based and innovative products will only stand out. Care must be taken to follow environmental norms, like use of recycled paper etc. to emphasise the basic theme of Eco-tourism. The active participation in various national and international travel/tourism/trade fairs is another effective method of self-projection at minimum cost.

**f. Information Database:**

A lot of important information about the state has been documented by various agencies over the years. However, it is lying scattered all over, without any reference cataloguing. The genuinity of the information is also not guaranteed. Easy access to this information is very important from tourism point. The tourism department should take lead to coordinate with various government departments and other agencies to compile and systematically document this information as a reference database. Even the tourism data needs to be collected/analysed systematically. This will be very useful for the tourism department and others for the development of future strategy, dissemination of information and also for educational purposes. This could be carried out through professional assignment.

**g. Signage and Graphic Design:**

These are important tools to create identity while achieving functionality through aesthetics. At present, this is non-existent in Nagaland Tourism. This also requires professional and strong concept based approach. This could be achieved in many ways like directional signage towards tourist places, logo for the department, stationery of the department, staff uniforms, name plates, vehicles etc. This is inexpensive item considering the outputs it could achieve. The roadside signage and tourism hoardings could be implemented in close collaboration with the GREF / PWD since they have budget provisions for such features in their road development activities.

**h. Budget:**

The entire exercise of tourism development has to be carefully planned considering all financial implications. The realistic estimate is the key for successful and timely completion of the assignments. The financial planning and management is utmost important for short term and long term objectives. The functional and financial phasing of the development activities can be worked out through this exercise. It provides the clear vision for the management.

**4. SPECIFIC UNIQUE TOURISM PROJECTS FOR NAGALAND:**

The mountainous and rugged terrain of Nagaland is unique and picturesque. However, it creates tremendous communication problems. Two neighbouring places on the map in fact become distant places on site due to the mountains, valleys and winding roads, which one has to cross. The poor infrastructure is another major hurdle for travellers. We therefore have adopted a strategy to propose region wise specific and unique tourist destinations with diverse activities where tourists may spend longer time rather than spend time in

travel. This will also encourage tourists to come again to Nagaland and visit the other beautiful destinations. The selection and distribution of these places is based on the topography and administrative/management conveniences.

**a. Phokhungri / Zungki & Chindwin Rivers / Shilloi Lake (Myanmar border) Region, International Collaborative Project:**

This could be the first International Collaborative Project in Nagaland. The Tourism Department has already developed a Rest House at Shilloi Lake, which is incomplete/non-functional due to some administrative problem. This should be made functional as soon as possible.

However, we recommend a larger regional project with International collaboration with Myanmar considering the tremendous tourism potential of this region. Some unique features of this region:

- An ethnic village Phokhungri located within the hills, which are extension of the famous Saramati mountain range.
- Beautiful and serene ecosystem of the Zungki River, which originates in Manipur, meanders through the Phek district of Nagaland and enters Myanmar to join the famous Chindwin River.
- Picturesque Shilloi Lake located on the hill slopes of the Indo-Myanmar watershed in Nagaland, about 5 Kms. from the Myanmar border. The lake is located at a scenic site surrounded by lush green hills. The lake spread over an area of about 0.30 Sq. Kms. is a mystic place for the people of Nagaland and Myanmar and has various folk tales ascribed to it.
- Possible accessibility to the confluence of the Zungki River with the Chindwin River in Myanmar.
- In general, very beautiful topography and landscape.

International boundaries are always of great interest to the tourists. This place has been already popular amongst the locals. There is a very cordial and transparent relationship between India and Myanmar at this border and people from both sides intermingle. This spirit of international comradeship could be further enhanced and used through appropriate tourism development of the region.

An International Border Trade Centre could be planned and developed at a suitable location in the region. This could help in the socio-economic development of the regions from both the countries. It could improve the infrastructure in the region.

The tourists could be offered a package, which can include the other interesting features of the Phek district:

- Pfutsero, the highest town in Nagaland (Alt. 2,133.60 Meters) famous for its cool climate and also fresh vegetables and fruits.
- Glory Peak (2133.60 Meters), a hill picnic spot near Pfutsero town is developed and maintained by a local organisation – ‘Pfutsero Town Christian Youth Endeavour’. In winter months when the sky is clear one could see Mt. Everest from this peak. Christmas is a big celebration here.
- Khezakenoma village on Manipur border which is the ancestral home of many of the southern Naga tribes. There are many interesting legends attached to this place.
- Zanibu Lake near Phek
- Cultural Centres to be developed at the villages of Chetheba and Chozuba
- Dzulha Village to be developed for Rural Tourism located on the border of Phek and Zunheboto districts at an altitude of about 2000 Meters. This village has unique identity because of community participation and ethnic cultural traditions, arts and sports. The village is also proud of its own community Wildlife Sanctuary covering a natural forest of about 4.00 Sq. Kms.

The development of these features in a planned manner and with community participation should be the part of this comprehensive and integrated project.

However, this requires a broad and futuristic vision in planning, extremely careful handling of the serene ecosystem and an integrated approach. Utmost care is required to check that the development of the proposed Border Trade Centre and also any developments in the region will follow all environmental and ecological parameters. The ecosystems of the Zungki River and Shilloi Lake need to be conserved and enhanced under this project. The co-ordination of various departments and agencies will be required to handle this sensitive project. The basic concept and Master Plan, including the development of all the features and overall budget should be worked out immediately and developed in phases over the next five years. This requires professional inputs of very high standard.

This project has great potential to become an international attraction of very high value. A large funding for international projects like this could be possible from many international organisations with proper presentation of the project proposal. We strongly recommend this project as a high priority project for Nagaland.

**b. Mt. Saramati International Biosphere Reserve (including Fakim Wildlife Sanctuary) and a Centre for Ecology, Adventure & Culture, at Thanamir / Fakim in SouthTuensang district on Myanmar border, an Eco-tourism Project:**

This could be another interesting Eco-tourism project on the International Border. Mt. Saramati is the highest mountain (3841.00 Meters) in Nagaland and has an importance being on the Indo-Myanmar border. Tourism Department has developed a Rest House at Thanamir for trekkers visiting Mt. Saramati, which is non-functional at present. The Forest Department has some infrastructure at Fakim Wildlife Sanctuary.

Fig. 6 – Mt. Saramati:



The Mt. Saramati Hill Range is the highest in the mountainous terrain of Nagaland. This is situated in the extreme southeast of Nagaland and in the extreme south of the Tuensang district bordering Myanmar on its east. The average height of this mountain range is approx. 2000 Meters and the highest peak of Nagaland, Mt. Saramati is at an altitude of 3841 Meters. The peak remains snow covered during winter. The hill range runs in north – south direction and is flanked with deep river valleys, Zungki River on its south, Likimro River on its west and Chindwin River on its east (in Myanmar).

Tuensang and Phek are the nearest towns to approach Mt. Saramati via a winding road connecting various villages e.g. Shamatop, Kiphere, Pungro, Thanamir, Akhegwo, Meluri etc on the way. This road further joins the State Highway (via Zunheboto) and NH-61 connecting Mokokchung and Kohima. The capital city of Nagaland is about 300 Kms. from the Mt. Saramati.

The Saramati mountain range was covered with rich natural and diverse forests. Jhoom agriculture and deforestation has degraded the area to some extent. However, the region still supports good biodiversity with natural

flora and fauna. The diversity in forest types is visible at varied altitudes, ranging from Sub-Tropical Evergreen and Semi-Evergreen to Temperate Broad-leaved, Pine, Rhododendron and Alpine vegetation. Several species of orchids are found in this region. The wildlife is declined due to hunting and habitat destruction, however interesting birds, insects and reptiles are found in the region. Almost similar landscape and biodiversity extends on the eastern side of in Myanmar. Very recently a new species of deer is discovered in this region by ecologists.

The region has very low population density. The hills are habituated by small villages scattered at different heights. The population mainly belongs to Sangtam, Yimchungers and Sema tribes. They still follow the ethnic traditions and are proud of their dance, music, festivals and handicrafts. The cultural intermingling is very evident here. The border of Nagaland and Myanmar is very fluid and transparent. The literacy rate is high here and people are simple, hospitable and self-reliant. The village councils could play a major role in the participatory development of this large project.

The Nagaland Tourism has not yet realised the tourism potential of Saramati Mountain Range region. Even the Forest Department has ignored this eco-sensitive zone, except for the Fakim Wildlife Sanctuary whose natural potential is not used for conservation and nature education. Here is an opportunity to achieve Ecological Conservation of this rich Biosphere (including the region in Myanmar) and at the same time use it sensitively for Eco-tourism, Adventure Tourism and Cultural Tourism. The trekking season of winter could be used to arrange various festivals, thus involving local community in the whole process. The project can enhance the Ecology of the region and also the socio-economics of the local people. The well-designed Centre could be useful for international students, scientists, ecologists, naturalists and general tourists. The local people should be initiated and involved in offering accommodation to the tourists in their houses.

We recommend following action plan for Mt. Saramati International Biosphere Reserve:

- The Mt. Saramati Biosphere Reserve and the Centre for Ecology, Adventure & Culture will be an Eco-tourism Project, a joint venture of Nagaland and Myanmar.
- The area to be covered within this project will include entire Saramati Mountain Range, River Valleys of Zungki and Likimro rivers and the adjoining mountain range in Myanmar including the Chindwin River valley. The approximate extent of area will be 600 Sq. Kms. in Nagaland and 500 Sq. Kms. in Myanmar. Generally, the Biosphere Reserve will be under the control of the Forest Department.

- The Biosphere Reserve will have extensive and multidisciplinary activities of Ecological Conservation and Eco-tourism. This will be entirely managed by the local people under the active guidance and supervision of various government departments from both the states. It will be an integrated approach through Joint Tourism Committees. The major departments that will be actively involved are Tourism, Forest, Agriculture and Horticulture, Rural Development, Tribal Development.
- A few activities that could be taken up under the project are River Valley Ecological Development, Alternate Agriculture / Horticulture, Adventure Trails, Nature Trails, Wildlife Studies, Afforestation, Nurseries of endangered and medicinal plants, Orchid conservation and cultivation, Nature Education, Water / Soil Conservation, Rural Heritage and Culture, Art and Handicrafts.
- An ancillary offshoot of this project will be the development of an effective communication link between Nagaland and Myanmar. This could be socio-economically beneficial for the East Nagaland region. It also provides collaborative tourism opportunities and international circuits for Nagaland and Myanmar.
- International Border is always a tourist attraction. There could be navigational service to take tourists up to the Myanmar border or to the confluence of Zungki and Chindwin rivers. Local trade across the border may take place and relationship amongst the people could be transformed into friendship.

The Nagaland Tourism should initiate this project and start interaction with Myanmar Tourism. The basic concept and Master Plan, including overall budget should be worked out immediately and developed in phases over the next five years. This requires professional inputs of very high standard. This project has great tourism potential. However it requires a broad and futuristic vision in planning, extremely careful handling of the serene ecosystem and an integrated approach. Utmost care is required to check that any developments in the region will follow all environmental and ecological parameters. The co-ordination of various departments and agencies will be required to handle this sensitive project.

It will not be difficult to generate large international funding for a project of ecological importance. Preliminary funding could be available from various schemes of the state and central agencies. The proposal needs to be presented in a scientific and systematic form. This project has great tourism potential. We strongly recommend this project as a high priority project for Nagaland.

**c. Eco-tourism, Wildlife & Adventure Tourism Projects:**

This is a very popular and upcoming tourism sector all over the world. It is very important aspect for Nagaland since Nature, Forests and Wildlife are major assets of Nagaland. Additionally, the Eco-tourism is the basic theme of Nagaland Tourism and development of these projects will be like presenting the best model of eco-tourism to the country. These projects need to be coordinated with the Forest Department who has basic infrastructure and authorised control over the region. Some unique protected areas of Nagaland have been identified for this development:

- **Intangki National Park:**

The Intangki National Park is situated in the extreme south-western part of Nagaland, in Kohima district on the border of Assam. This is the largest sanctuary in Nagaland admeasuring about 202 Sq. Km. The forest type here is Northern Tropical Semi Evergreen with the dominance of deciduous species. This region has a large area under natural forest which shelters interesting flora and fauna. The national park is facing a problem of encroachments. The major animals found here are Elephant, Tiger, Leopard, Deer, Hoolock Gibbon, Gour, Wild Boar and variety birds, insects and reptiles. The number of wild animals is low due to various threats. This perhaps is the only tiger area in Nagaland now. The national park could be approached from Dimapur.

- **Rangapahar Wildlife Sanctuary:**

The Rangapahar Wildlife Sanctuary is situated in the South Dimapur district of Nagaland. The region is on the border of Assam and is adjacent to the Intangki National Park. The forest types here are Tropical and sub-tropical Moist Deciduous & Evergreen vegetation intermixed with degraded and bamboo vegetation. The Sanctuary admeasures 4.70 Sq. Km. presently and there is a possibility of merging this into the Intangki National Park and converting this into a large protected area. The Forest Department of Nagaland has proposed to shift the present zoo at Kohima to this Sanctuary, which is not a wise decision. The low elevations of this region provides ample opportunity for Eco-tourism including Nature Trails, Wildlife Studies, Adventure Tourism etc.

- Puliebadze Wildlife Sanctuary

This Sanctuary admeasuring about 9.23 Sq. Km. is situated in the Kohima district of Nagaland and is at a very close distance to Kohima city. This sanctuary has good natural forest and shelters interesting flora and fauna. It is the natural habitat of endangered Blyth's Tragopan. This Sanctuary has unique location advantage being close to the capital city. It has tourist advantage however the population pressure needs to be handled sensitively and firmly.

- Bird Sanctuaries at Changtonya in Mokokchung district and at Ghoshu in Zunheboto district

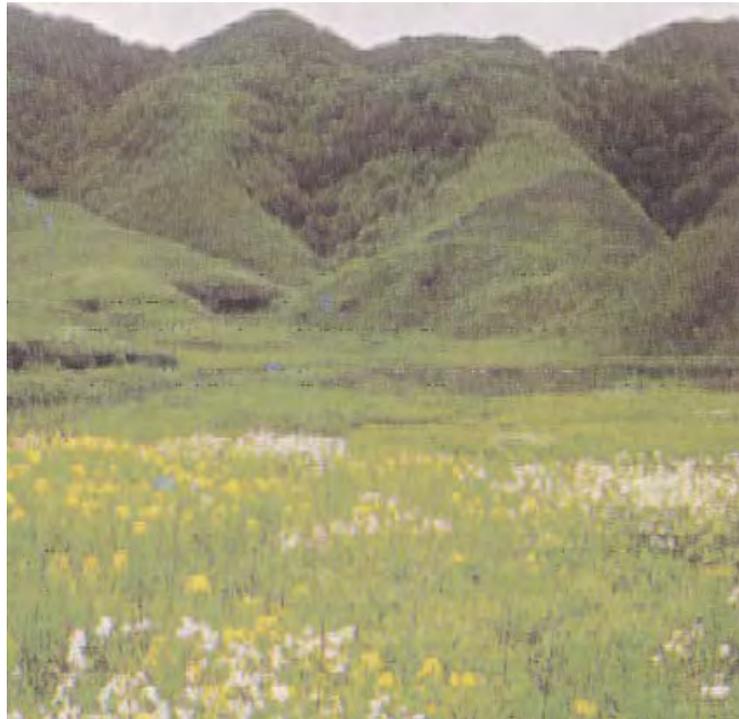
These places attract a lot of birds including many species of migratory birds in the migration season. The tourism department has already developed a Wayside Amenity on the Tamlu road, just above the Dikhu River. This could become an attractive spot.

- Dzukou Valley

The Dzukou Valley is situated in Kohima district about 30 Kms. from Kohima city. It is tucked away at an altitude of 2438 Meters behind the Japfu mountain range. Its emerald green rolling hills are trekkers' delight. The vegetation diversity is enormous and in the summer it gets converted into the Valley of Flowers. It is one of the most popular trekking spots in the Northeast.

These forests have been identified as some representative natural forest areas of Nagaland, since these are the only protected areas in the state. These sites are close to the major towns of Dimapur and Kohima and infrastructure facilities required for Eco-tourism & Adventure Tourism are easily available. Another protected area of Fakim Wilidlife Sanctuary in Tuensang district has been already considered in the larger project. There are many smaller areas now under the Village Community Protected Areas. These are community efforts and are interesting places for Eco-tourism with the active participation of local people. The network of such areas needs to be documented and converted into a good tourist package.

Fig. 7 – Dzukou Valley:



Since these small areas are distributed all over the state it will provide opportunity for tourists to enjoy the natural and geographical diversity, without putting these areas under tourism pressure. This will also provide interesting opportunities for ecologists and wildlife researchers to study diverse regions with a possibility of international collaboration. Being on the international boundary of Myanmar, there could be possibilities of international joint wildlife conservation and research programme. There could be excellent possibility to attract international funding for conservation and research and develop this into a Northeast Ecological Research Centre. The areas need to be carefully managed according to the strict norms of the Ministry of Environment and Forests. Definite Tourism Zones should be demarcated and tourist activities should be restricted within that zone. Even the tourism development should be within the strict norms of Eco-tourism. The Tourism Department should work closely with the Forest Department to popularise these sites for innovative experience and also for ecological research. This is an excellent avenue for the Tourism Department to earn publicity and revenue without much investment.

**d. Cultural Tourism through integration at the International / Interstate Tri-junctions:**

Nagaland has interesting advantage of its geographical location having large and peaceful international border with Myanmar.

At four unique locations this provides opportunity for triangular cultural integration. These locations have potential to be developed into Large Cultural Centres, spread over these three diverse regions. The locations identified are as under:

- Junction of Manipur, Myanmar and Nagaland:

This is the Southeast corner of Nagaland. The exact location has to be identified which will be within a Rural Development Block of the Phek District. Nagaland Tourism should take initiative to develop this Cultural Centre jointly with Manipur State and Myanmar.

- Junction of Arunachal Pradesh, Myanmar and Nagaland:

This is the Northeast corner of Nagaland. The exact location has to be identified which will be within a Rural Development Block of the Mon District, somewhere near the Longwa/Nyasia villages. Nagaland Tourism should take initiative to develop this Cultural Centre in collaboration with Myanmar and Arunachal Pradesh State.

- Junction of Manipur, Assam and Nagaland:

This is the Southwest corner of Nagaland. The exact location has to be identified which will be within a Rural Development Block of the Kohima District, somewhere near the Tuipuibari village. Nagaland Tourism should take initiative to develop this Cultural Centre in collaboration with Manipur and Assam States.

- Junction of Arunachal Pradesh, Assam and Nagaland:

This is the northernmost corner of Nagaland. The exact location has to be identified which will be within a Rural Development Block of the Mon District, somewhere near the Namtola / Lapa villages. Nagaland Tourism should take initiative to develop this Cultural Centre in collaboration with Arunachal Pradesh and Assam States.

These Cultural Centres will be a unique contribution of Nagaland not only to India but also to the Southeast Asia to showcase the cultural diversity and its integration. This project can evoke sponsorships from various national and international quarters.

**e. Agriculture Centres at Zunheboto , Khonoma & Handicraft Centres at Mon – Tuensang, Dimapur:**

Nagaland's main economy is agriculture. Unfortunately, the forests have been degraded due to traditional practice of jhoom cultivation. However, the new thought has entered and new experiments are being introduced to the people. These have become interesting demonstration and educational areas for local people. These demonstration areas can also become attractions for the farmers from the Northeast Region. It will be of interest of general tourist also if presented in an innovative package.

Many villages in the Zunheboto district have taken lead in the active participation of the first International Agricultural/Horticultural/Forestry project called NEPED. This is a project for sustainable future of the Naga farmers. The project commenced in February 1995 and the first phase was completed in March 2001, which included the bridging period of nine months. Since the first phase was found to be extremely successful and going in the right direction, the second phase was approved and started its operations from April 2001. NEPED means Nagaland Empowerment of People through Economic Development, and the project has really demonstrated the peoples' power. About 1800 farmers from 854 villages in all eight districts of Nagaland are actively involved in this agricultural experimentation covering about 5500 hectares of land as an alternative to jhoom. This includes very active participation of women and their independent empowerment towards self-reliance. In fact the village councils voluntarily allotted 93 test plots to women. This is an agricultural revolution in Nagaland. The farmers from Zunheboto district are leading in this endeavour. During the bridge period (June 2000 to March 2001) a 'Test Cluster' of 4 villages from Zunheboto district was created as Cardamom Belt. Special training, experimentation, market research and export oriented strategy was evolved by the villagers under the expert guidance from NEPED officials. This success story must become a show window of Nagaland.

Similarly, Khonoma region is very famous for its terraced agriculture as a tradition. The community has also evolved a fallow land management strategy using the regeneration of Alder trees to reinstate the habitat degraded by the jhoom cultivation. The village community has also developed the Tragopan Sanctuary in the region. This combination of traditions and experimentation could be a good model for the villagers, not only of Nagaland but also for the farmers of the entire country.

The handicrafts of Nagaland are quite unique and famous. Entire village community is involved in the art of handicraft as an integral part of their life style. However, certain tribal communities, from

various specific regions have evolved their own unique styles and specialisation. The people from Mon – Tuensang region are known for this calibre. Similarly, a Craft Village is already in existence near Dimapur, where all the villagers are engaged in craft activities.

We propose that Agriculture / Handicraft Centres should be created at appropriate locations in these regions. These centres should be developed on a participatory basis and local people should be directly involved in the activities and programmes. The villages here have already become quite famous for their achievements and the farmers, more particularly women should be encouraged to take lead in the development of handloom and handicraft industry under these centres. The people can produce beautiful traditional and modern design textiles and handicrafts as a cottage industry. Thus these villages have great potential to develop and popularise the Agriculture / Handicraft Centres.

Nagaland Tourism should take initiative to develop this Centre in collaboration with NEPED and the other Departments like Agriculture, Horticulture, Animal Husbandry, Tribal Development, Education, Khadi & Handloom Board, and Rural Development etc. The hilly landscapes of the villages and surrounding picturesque region could be the added attractions to the other features. The Satoi Range with its natural forests and Blyth's Tragopan and the Ghosu Bird Sanctuary maintained by the village community to protect migratory birds which visit the place in winter, are in the nearby vicinity and could be the other attractions. These places are centrally located in Nagaland and tourists could be easily attracted with an attractive and innovative package. The investment component could be low considering the existing features and possible collaboration with the other Departments. The North East Council and NEPED could be major sponsors in this endeavour since they are promoting the agricultural development in Nagaland.

#### **f. Defence Tourism:**

The state of Nagaland has a very long International border with Myanmar. Due to this, there is significant presence of Army in this region. Some of the establishments are quite old like the one at Kohima. These Cantonment areas have their own character and they evolve with unique identity. The major Cantonment Areas in the country have been declared as Heritage Sites due to their uniqueness of the character and also the historical background that they carry.

These Cantonment areas in Nagaland need to be identified by the Nagaland Tourism in collaboration with the Army. Some special programmes could be organised jointly in the Cantonment areas for the tourists. It could be a big attraction and would provide small

opportunity to the armed forces to interact with the civilians interested in their activities and contribution in the country's defence.

The War Cemetery at Kohima is world famous and its setting brings in the emotions of respect and sacrifice in the minds of visitors. These emotions could be further diverted to the specially identified Cantonment areas.

During the World War II, the soldiers followed various routes passing through Nagaland. The Naga community in these regions was actively involved in the War and fought the Japanese soldiers who were attempting to invade India. There are nostalgic associations of the villagers along these routes. The Nagaland Tourism wishes to develop a World War II, Defence Tourism Circuit along these routes between Myanmar, Manipur, Kohima and some parts of Assam.

Defence is the subject of great passion of everyone and if Nagaland Tourism could tap this existing potential quickly, it would advance considerably on the tourism map of the country.

#### **g. Water Tourism:**

The unique hilly topography of Nagaland has created some interesting natural features all over the countryside. Nagaland gets considerable monsoon rain and this hilly terrain gets flooded with streams, rivers, waterfalls and lakes. Very few rivers are perennial, however they make interesting attractions in the overall mountainous landscape.

Some rivers, lakes and waterfalls are already popular and have become major tourist spots e.g. Doyang River and the Reservoir in Wokha district, Shilloi Lake in Phek district, The Triple Waterfall at Seithekima etc. Nagaland Tourism has already developed some infrastructure at these places, however it is not functional presently. The efforts are also on to develop River Rafting and Water Sports facilities in a few rivers and lakes. However, the most important concept of ecological development of these regions should be taken into consideration. It is necessary to prepare a Master Plan to develop Water Tourism concept for Nagaland. This should follow all the norms of the Ministry of Environment & Forests, particularly related to the conservation of our water bodies. This plan should also take into consideration the possibilities of Watershed Development of the region. Ecological Landscape Design of the Tourist Spots, creation of interesting and educational Nature Trails and Adventure Trails and providing serene, picturesque ambience should be the objectives for such a plan.

The Water Tourism should be developed with this innovative approach rather than typical entertainment approach. The Monsoon Clouds and the Rain are the most wonderful features of the mountains. Nagaland Rains can attract tourists from all over the world. The tourists should be able to enjoy all the moods of Monsoon, Rain and Water in different forms in Nagaland and carry those memories along with them. That will be a success story for Nagaland Tourism.

#### **h. Rural Tourism:**

The State of Nagaland has its main economy dependent on hill agriculture and except a few district HQs which are like small towns, the entire state has a rural character. However, the Naga population is being largely influenced by the western culture and the ethnic tribal traditions are remotely visible even in the villages. Under these circumstances, the concept of Rural Tourism plays a very major role. There are a few villages, which still maintain their ethnic traditions, including the rural architecture. This rural lifestyle expresses the way people have been living sustainably using natural resources around them judiciously. Their traditional wisdom is reflected in many of their old practices like use of herbal medicines, understanding of natural elements to predict the climatic conditions, agricultural rituals and festivals etc. It is a social evolutionary process in which slowly these traditions will be transformed into modern lifestyle. Exactly for this very reason, it is important to conserve a few traditional villages. This lifestyle is a subject of interest for many visitors and also sociologists. Their folk arts and handicrafts have a great artistic value and they need to be encouraged. The development of Tourism around these traditional villages is one way to give them respect that they deserve.

In Nagaland, there are a few villages under the Village Councils, which present this character. Nagaland Tourism has already identified various villages and has proposed a Tourist Village concept at Chumukedima in Dimapur district as a basic infrastructure for tourists. However we recommend that Nagaland Tourism should identify the villages and village councils who are willing to develop entire village as a traditional village for the purpose of Rural Tourism. These villages should be inhabited by tribal communities who maintain their ethnic identity through language, art forms, textiles, festivals, architecture etc. Tuophema village in Kohima district and Chuchuyimlang village in Mokokchung district are good initiatives of the local community.

Another tribal community that has taken such initiative is at Dzulha Village in Phek district located on Kohima - Zunheboto border road. This village with a scenic location, natural forest, abundance of water and ethnic and warm-hearted Chakhesang tribal community could be an excellent destination for Rural Tourism. The village observes all their festivals, sports, music and dance and follows these festivities along with the agricultural activities. They produce excellent handicrafts. We strongly recommend this site for Rural Tourism.

The other region that could be considered for Rural Tourism is the Mon district. Mon brings pictures of chiefs, tattooed faces of Konyak tribes and the muzzle loading guns that they manufacture. The Shangnyu village and the Chui village are ideal destinations for Rural Tourism. Even as they are, they reflect the perfect ethnic picture of typical Naga village.

The Master Plan for such development has to be prepared carefully. The Ministry of Tourism, GOI has decided to give priority funding to the projects of Rural Tourism (one in each state) and we recommend that a Dzulha Village of Tonimeis and Chui Village of Konyaks may be identified on a priority basis to be developed under Rural Tourism concept. The basic funding could be available from the Department of Tourism, GOI that could be complemented with other resources from various allied departments like Rural Development, Tribal Development etc.

This project will provide true identity and character to Nagaland Tourism.

#### **i. Urban Tourism:**

In spite of all the charms of nature and wilderness, the main attraction for the majority of tourists is major cities. Urban Tourism is at great advantage due to this universal fact. Interestingly, Nagaland has one very charming city, wonderfully located and ideally developed. This is Kohima, the capital of Nagaland.

Kohima being the capital city of Nagaland most of the infrastructure facilities are already available. However, the Master Plan for the city needs to be carefully prepared to develop the city for Urban Tourism. Various innovative tourist attractions should be designed and developed. The existing amenities should be upgraded or transformed. The nightscapes of Kohima are amazing and the Master Plan of the city could be evolved for the appreciation of such features.

Fig. 8 – Kohima City:



There are many existing tourist attractions at Kohima City e.g. War Cemetery, State Museum, Catholic Cathedral, Botanical Park, the Market, Kohima Village etc. Additionally, there are many historical features and unique strategic locations providing panoramic views of the surrounding region. All these need to be developed carefully with environmental and aesthetic approach. Kohima has potential to become the most charming city of the Northeast.

It is obvious that this project will require large investments. However being the urban areas, it is possible to generate this funding locally. A few of the projects could be given to private entrepreneurs on BOT basis. The Tourism Department already has substantial infrastructure and economical stake in this city. Nagaland Tourism can comfortably take off from these existing assets to develop Urban Tourism immediately. The revenue generation from these efforts will also be simpler and there will be many other benefits and multiplier advantages. The socio-economic potential of this project will be very high. This project must be taken on a priority basis.

#### **j. Regional Nature Parks:**

Tourism requires large open spaces and parks for people for passive recreation. At present Nagaland does not have this amenity. Nature is in abundance everywhere but tourists require basic facilities and some innovative features and activities linked with these open spaces. There are Wildlife Sanctuaries, but they have restricted areas and control on

free movement. It is therefore necessary to develop a few large parks on the basic concept of Ecological Conservation. They should not become amusement / entertainment parks. These parks should have recreation and education value. They should be well spread out over the state. The funding could be available from the Ministry of Environment & Forests under their various schemes. International funding is also a good possibility. We have following suggestions:

- **Ecological Park at Mount Tiyi in Wokha District:**

Mount Tiyi is a hill with mysterious legends. One of the Naga legends mentions about the existence of an orchard on this hill. The hill shelters colourful Rhododendrons and the peak offers panoramic view of the surrounding villages, hills and valleys. This region is in a better state as far as natural biodiversity is concerned. The population and urbanisation pressures are also less. A large (Over 100 Hectares) Ecological / Nature Park should be designed and developed at the Mount Tiyi.

The basic theme will be to represent Nagaland's indigenous flora and fauna along with innovative features for tourists. The park will also have educational component built into it in a form of Conservation Centre. This can develop into an attractive tourist spot for local and domestic tourists.

- **Botanical Park / Orchid Sanctuary at Kohima:**

Kohima is the capital city of Nagaland. A large (Over 100 Hectares) Botanical Park and Orchid Sanctuary could be developed on the site of the existing zoo. The existing zoo is in a pathetic condition and there is a proposal to shift it and convert the site into Tragopan breeding centre. This is not advisable and we recommend the site to be converted into a Botanical Park. Already quite diverse vegetation exists on the interesting contoured site. If possible, the area should be increased by including some adjoining open land. The Park should represent the indigenous flora of Nagaland and separate innovative sections including an Orchid Sanctuary. Nagaland and the Northeast Region are famous for variety of wonderful orchids. The forest department has produced a beautiful book on the Orchids of Nagaland. These could be conserved and promoted here. Greenhouse for endangered plants; section for insectivorous plants, Herbal Garden etc. could be other interesting features. The park will have good tourist and educational value. It will be very useful for schools and colleges for their outdoor activities and excursions.

Nagaland Tourism could initiate all these Regional Parks in collaboration with the other departments like Forest, Education, and Horticulture etc. The funding is possible from the Ministry of

Environment & Forests and also from International Agencies. They require to be carefully and sensitively designed including the activities, research component and the management plan. These Parks could be an excellent tourist attraction, particularly to the domestic and local sector.

**k. Heritage Tourism:**

Nagaland does not have many and important Heritage Sites like many other states in the country. Therefore it is important to highlight and develop a few sites of historical and heritage importance. We have identified a few such sites as under:

**The War Cemetery, Kohima:**

The Kohima War Cemetery which was developed in memory of the soldiers who made supreme sacrifice during the World War II, is already world famous and gets international visitors. It has been maintained very well and Nagaland Tourism should create good publications on this historical and beautiful heritage site.

**Kohima Village, Kohima:**

This is the largest village in Asia. Here one sees admixture of the past and present. The village consists of several 'khels' or hamlets of different tribal communities. There are traditional wooden gates adorned with Hornbill beaks and Mithun horns. The motifs indicate the bravery and valour of the Angamis. Also seen are the relics of stone erections in front of the houses, which are memorial symbols of the ancestors who had offered grand feasts of merits. The village is under pressure of urbanisation and needs to be conserved for its heritage value. A systematic Heritage Plan should be worked out for the conservation of this historic and unique site.

**The Ruins of Medieval Kachari Kingdom, Dimapur:**

The ancient Kachari capital at Dimapur is one of the important sites of megalithic culture. Most of the ruins appear to be contemporaries with the Kachari civilization, established before the Ahom invasion in the 13<sup>th</sup> Century A. D. Additional to these monoliths, there are other ruins of temples, Entrance Gateway, embankment and tanks. This site will require a lot of technical and development inputs. Nagaland Tourism should take initiative in collaboration with the Tribal Research Institute, Archaeological Survey of India, Education Department etc. to develop this as a unique tourist spot.

Fig. 9 – The Ruins of Kachari Kingdom, Dimapur:



**Khonoma Village, Kohima district:**

Khonoma village has history for its fighting prowess. In 1879, this village confronted the British infiltration to the Naga Hills and a fierce battle was fought. The memorials of this fight are in existence. The village has other traditional features such as terraced fields along the deep valleys where 20 different varieties of paddy are cultivated at different elevations. The village is also proud to have its own Community Tragopan Sanctuary.

**Historical site at Naganimora, Mon district:**

Naganimora village is a historical site. This is the place, which was earlier known as Lakhan. The Konyak Queen who had married Ahom King died here and the King renamed the village Lakhan as Naganimora meaning the Death of the Naga Queen. Apart from this legend, the place could be of interest from historical point of view particularly since it involves some cultural association with the neighbouring state of Assam. Nagaland is also known to have some references in Mahabharata about the Naga (Kirata) Queen Ulupi marrying Arjun. Nagaland Tourism should take initiative, carry out some basic historical investigations and development and popularise this spot.

### **Molung & Impur, Mokokchung district: 1<sup>st</sup> Baptist Mission in Nagaland:**

This is the first village where the American Baptist was established in 1876. Today almost entire Nagaland follows Christianity. The old Mission Building and the Leechi Tree planted by the first missionary, Dr. E. W. Clark are still in existence and act as inspiration to the visitors. This place has an important historical and heritage value and should be popularised as a tourist spot. Impur became the Mission Centre later on and there are heritage buildings of the 19<sup>th</sup> century, in use even today. Nagaland Tourism should work out collaborative programmes and tourism strategy along with the Church authorities.

### **Heritage Complex at Kisama near Kohima:**

Nagaland Tourism wishes to develop a permanent Heritage Tourism Complex for organising various festivals like Hornbill Festivals, Dance Festivals etc. This could be developed as a permanent site for exhibitions and cultural activities. The traditional architecture and features of Nagaland could be depicted as permanent features here.

This development of Heritage Tourism should not be of much financial burden for Nagaland Tourism since the publicity will be the major input. Basic tourist facilities and landscape improvement of the surrounding area need to be provided by the department. A collaborative effort would reduce the burden and achieve an interesting feature of Heritage, which is lacking today.

## **1. Tourism Festivals:**

Tourism Festivals is a very popular concept in the tourism industry. However, its major objective is publicity. Nagaland Tourism organises Hornbill Festival in December every year at Kohima. General observation is that these festivals are not sustainable on their own. We recommend that Nagaland Tourism, at this juncture, should take up only those festivals which are economically feasible and which could attract large participation. Tourism Department could initiate three activities as under:

### **Christmas & New Year:**

Nagaland being a predominantly Christian state, Christmas and New Year are celebrated with a lot of jubilation. The atmosphere is very festive during this period. The season is also excellent for tourism. Nagaland Tourism should use this Christmas / New Year Festival opportunity to attract tourism in the state. A grand festival should be planned in Kohima with various activities, cultural programmes, handicraft exhibitions, ethnic food feasts etc. Church authorities could be also involved in these programmes. Kohima city with its urban and

geographical charm could become a popular tourist destination due to this Festival Tourism. Nagaland Tourism should start this from this year with wide publicity through newspapers / magazines articles.

Fig. 10 – Naga Tribes in a Festive Mood:



#### **Traditional Tribal Festivals:**

Nagas are dependent on agriculture and their culture revolves around the agricultural activities. These activities are associated with traditional festivity. Each tribal community has its own festival and associated rituals and dances. These are still observed with the old traditions in a few villages. This should be made popular to tourists so that tourists could visit these villages at the time of festivals and enjoy true festive colours. The only investment for Nagaland Tourism is the cost of publicity.

#### **Festivals in collaboration with Star Hotels:**

As a part of publicity effort outside the state, Nagaland Tourism should try to collaborate with various Star Hotels in the major cities and organise Naga Festivals in these hotels at different times. The festivals could include ethnic cultural programmes, handicraft exhibitions and special food. Such festivals could attract wide attention of tourists without much cost to the tourism department. The tourism department gets advantage of hotel infrastructure whereas hotel gets advantage of unique programme and special clientele. This could achieve excellent publicity for Nagaland Tourism all over the country at a very minimum cost.

## 5. SPECIFIC UNIQUE TOURISM CIRCUITS FOR NAGALAND:

Tourism Circuits is a very popular concept in the tourism sector today. The development of such circuits and organising tours on these circuits becomes economical for both tourists and tourism departments. Various tour organisers also find it convenient from the management point of view.

However, in Nagaland where infrastructure is a major obstacle for tourism, the Circuit Tourism does not look appropriate at this juncture. There are a few unique possibilities, which could be worked out with careful planning and support system, even at the present situation. This Circuit Tourism will involve multi-mode transport and even trekking. However, this obstacle can become an opportunity to achieve success and popularity. It could be partly considered as Adventure Tourism. A few possible Circuits are as under:

- a. **Heritage circuit:** (Khonoma, Molung, Naginmora, Ethnic Villages under Rural Tourism, Handicraft Centre)
- b. **Wildlife circuit:** (All sanctuaries, National Park & Biosphere Reserve)
- c. **International Border Circuit:** (Myanmar border circuit)
- d. **Interstate Circuit:** (Nagaland – Manipur via Dzukou Valley, Nagaland – Assam via Doyang, Merapani, Longnak, Nagaland – Arunachal Pradesh via Longwa, Nantola circuits)
- e. **River Tourism Circuit:** (Perennial Rivers – Doyang, Dikhu, Zungki)
- f. **Defence Tourism & World War II Circuit:** (Myanmar – Kohima – Manipur – Assam)

This Circuit Tourism will need careful planning up to the smallest detail. It will also require the development of proper support system at various locations along the Circuit route. However, this could be an excellent opportunity to involve local people in the tourism development. This participatory effort could be an excellent economical opportunity for local people.

## 6. SPECIFIC TOURISM FEATURES FOR NAGALAND:

Nagaland has many more interesting features, which have tremendous tourism potential. Nagaland Tourism has been already trying to make these destinations popular and there are efforts to create infrastructure at these places. This scattered development generally goes waste, as it does not attract tourists in large numbers. This is particularly true for a difficult terrain like Nagaland. The Department should act like a catalyst to get these places developed through other agencies and make them popular as tourist destinations.

Some such destinations are:

- Dzukou Valley, Kohima District
- Japfu Peak
- Largest Rhododendron Tree in Japfu Range
- Dzulekie Village
- Longkhum Village, Mokokchung district
- Longwa Village, Mon district
- Veda Peak, Mon district
- Liphanyan Governor's Camp, Wokha district
- Doyang Hydro-electric Project
- Merema, NEPED demonstration plot
- Weaving Centres

Fig. 11 – Village Gate:



## CHAPTER – 7

### TOURISM TRENDS AND IMPLICATIONS IN NAGALAND

#### 1. Tourism Research and Documentation:

The status of Tourism Research and Documentation is quite low in India. Apart from the work of the Department of Tourism, Government of India, there is no significant research and documentation at the state level. The World Tourism Organisation provides Tourism Data on international tourism. The general scenario of Indian Tourism is also reflected from the Tourism Data made available by the Department of Tourism, Government of India. However, the genuineness of this data is somewhat doubtful since it is based on the information provided by the different states. At present, the states are not equipped to carry out Tourism Research and Documentation in a scientific way. The Northeast States are in a nascent stage in the field of Tourism Development. The state like Nagaland is quite young in this field and is in a process of getting organised. The Tourism Development has to be looked at like an Industry or Business. The Tourism Research and Documentation are the keys for appropriate strategy of Tourism Development in the State. Nagaland Tourism has maintained some general data on the Tourism Scenario in the State. It is not sufficient and a lot more attention has to be provided to this parameter. However, we have arrived at some possible trends and implications based on this limited data and also our own assumptions based on our fieldwork in the state. It should be noted that due to these limitations, these assessments and projections may not be accurate and they should be considered as indicative only.

#### 2. Past and Existing Tourism Trends:

Nagaland Tourism has maintained records of the tourist arrivals at their tourist lodges. The data provided by the Department of Tourism, Govt. of India (Table –3) gives overall general idea of tourists inflow to the state. It shows a random break up of foreign and domestic tourists. However, destination wise and category wise details of tourist arrivals are not available. We have to make certain assumptions based on this limited data available to us for interpretation.

General information of the Tourist Lodges and a few private hotels in Kohima is available (appendices – g, h). Additionally, there are ongoing and proposed/prioritised projects for tourist infrastructure (appendices – i, j), which are likely to be completed in a couple of years. There is some information available on the revenue collected by the Nagaland Tourism between 1985 and 2002 (appendix – f). There is some moderate private accommodation (assumed 5% of govt. accommodation) available in smaller towns. The occupancy rate at all these places varies between 30% and 50%. Considering low and off seasons, it is assumed that tourism is active in

Nagaland for about 200 days in a year. It is also noted that the most of the facilities created by the Nagaland Tourism are non-functional presently. The assumption of tourist arrivals at various destinations is made under this background and on the basis of the abovementioned criteria of occupancy.

The general indication of past trends and future projections for 20 years is as under:

**Table No. 7: Trends & Projections of Tourist Arrivals at the major Tourist Destinations:**

Destination	Past Trends			Future Projections (Annual-average)			
	1999	2000	2001	2002-2006	2007-2011	2012-2016	2017-2021
Phokhungri/Shilloi Lake Region, Int. Coll. Project				100	150	200	300
Mt. Saramati Int. Biosphere Reserve			100	100	200	300	500
Intangki National Park			100	100	150	200	300
Dzukou Valley			2000	2000	2500	3500	5000
International Tri-junctions				100	150	200	300
Interstate Tri-junctions				100	100	150	200
Agriculture/Handicraft Centre at Zunheboto			500	500	800	1000	2000
Defence Tourism					100	200	300
Rural Tourism			500	500	800	1000	2000
Water Tourism					100	200	300
Urban Tourism-Kohima, Dimapur			8000	8000	9000	12000	20000
Regional Parks at Wokha/Kohima			500	500	800	1000	1500
Heritage Tourism/Circuit			500	500	800	1000	1500
Wildlife Circuit				500	800	1000	2000
International Border Circuit					100	150	200
River Tourism Circuit				100	150	200	300
<b>TOTAL FOR NAGALAND</b>	<b>21160</b>	<b>13723</b>	<b>10868</b>	<b>12000-15000</b>	<b>16000-21000</b>	<b>22000-30000</b>	<b>33000-45000</b>

**Note:** The details of the past trends at various destinations are not available from the Nagaland Tourism. The numbers here are the total of domestic & foreign tourists, foreigners being approx. less than 0.5 % of the total tourists. The percentage of foreign tourists could increase only with very special efforts. The past trends show general decline of 28 %. This rate may gradually stabilise during the first five years, after which it may increase slowly to 5 % during the next 10 years and subsequently to 10 % over the next 5 years. Since the destination wise details of past trends are not available, assumptions are made for the availability of rooms/beds and 40% occupancy.

### 3. Future Tourism Implications:

We have proposed that Nagaland Tourism should be actively involved in the development of Tourism Destinations. They should not get involved in the development and management of Tourist Infrastructure like tourist lodges etc. However, at this preliminary juncture some basic infrastructure will have to be created by the government. The general progressive need of accommodation facilities (rooms/beds) at various destinations has been worked out based on the tourist projections for the next 20 years. The indicative projection is as under:

**Table No. 8:** Existing status and projected needs of accommodation (rooms / beds) at various destinations:

Destination	Existing Status (2001)		Future Projections (No. of Rooms / Beds)			
	No. of Rooms	No. of Beds	2002-2006	2007-2011	2012-2016	2017-2021
Phokhungri/Shilloi Lake Region, Int. Coll. Project	10	20	10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
Mt. Saramati Int. Biosphere Reserve	10	20	10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
Intangki National Park	10	20	10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
Dzukou Valley	20	40	20 / 40	25 / 50	30 / 60	35 / 70
International Tri-junctions			10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
Interstate Tri-junctions			5 / 10	5 / 10	10 / 20	15 / 30
Agriculture/Handicraft Centre at Zunheboto	10	20	10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
Defence Tourism			5 / 10	5 / 10	10 / 20	15 / 30
Rural Tourism	10	20	10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
Water Tourism			5 / 10	5 / 10	10 / 20	15 / 30
Urban Tourism-Kohima, Dimapur	700	1400	240 / 400	360 / 600	480 / 800	840 / 1400
Regional Parks at Wokha/Kohima	10	20	10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
Heritage Tourism/Circuit						
Wildlife Circuit	10	20	10 / 20	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
International Border Circuit			5 / 10	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
River Tourism Circuit			5 / 10	10 / 20	15 / 30	20 / 40
<b>TOTAL FOR NAGALAND</b>	<b>800</b>	<b>1600</b>	<b>390 / 700</b>	<b>510 / 900</b>	<b>730 / 1300</b>	<b>1140 / 2000</b>

(**Note:** This includes government (28 tourist lodges – 4 functional) and private (35 Hotels) accommodation. The combined data of destination wise existing infrastructure is not available. The most of the infrastructure of Nagaland Tourism is non-functional presently, however their future availability is presumed.)

Our proposal is based on the development of Tourism Destinations. At present the tourist accommodation is scattered all over and not necessarily linked to these destinations. However, this limitation can be used as an opportunity to combine accommodation facilities for various tourist destinations and tourist circuits. All infrastructure is not functional presently and once made functional, it should be sufficient to meet the needs of tourists.

It is our assessment that the present and ongoing projects should provide these minimum facilities to give preliminary impetus for tourism attraction in Nagaland. A large tourist infrastructure is lying idle today and emphasis must be given to up-grade these facilities and make them functional. The development of innovative tourism destinations combined with appropriate marketing and publicity strategy should attract steady tourist inflow to Nagaland. This inflow, in turn, would attract private investments in the hospitality and tourism business. The Nagaland Tourism should act as a catalyst and monitor/control this development.

#### **4. Evaluation and Future of Tourism:**

It is always useful and advisable to evaluate the Tourist Destinations based on various key parameters. The evaluation of the present status and the consideration of appropriate strategy for the tourism development in the state could indicate about the future of tourism.

There are several parameters required to be considered when one thinks about the development of tourist destinations.

The existing destinations need to be assessed based on their present status and further potential. The carrying capacity of each destination also needs to be considered. This is more important when the destinations are being developed with a strong concept of Eco-tourism. The status of existing general infrastructure like road, market etc. and specific infrastructure like tourist accommodation at or near the vicinity of the tourist destination needs thorough consideration. The data of the visitors provides information on the peak/off period, seasonal variations etc.

The new destinations could be assessed hypothetically, based on the evaluation of the similar trends, experience from the similar destinations and basic survey. We have already considered these factors while proposing the new destinations.

We have considered four parameters as key and indicative at this preliminary stage of tourism development. The assessment of the first two parameters – attraction and popularity, is subjective and based on our own understanding, interactions and experience. The assessment of the other parameters – infrastructure and volume of tourist traffic flow, is based on the existing status of these parameters.

**Table No. 9: General Evaluation of Tourist Destinations in Nagaland:**

(Note: The evaluation is graded on 1 to 10 scale from poor – fair – best, based on the existing status)

Destination	Attractions	Popularity	Infrastructure	Volume of Traffic Flow	Overall Average
Phokhungri/Shilloi Lake Region, Int. Coll. Project	8	6	4	3	<b>5.25</b>
Mt. Saramati Int. Biosphere Reserve	8	6	4	3	<b>5.25</b>
Intangki National Park	6	6	3	3	<b>6.00</b>
Dzukou Valley	8	8	5	5	<b>6.50</b>
International Tri-junctions	8	6	4	4	<b>5.50</b>
Interstate Tri-junctions	6	6	4	3	<b>4.75</b>
Agriculture/Handicraft Centres at Khonoma / Zunheboto	8	6	5	5	<b>6.00</b>
Defence Tourism	8	8	4	4	<b>6.00</b>
Rural Tourism	8	6	4	4	<b>5.50</b>
Water Tourism	6	5	3	2	<b>4.00</b>
Urban Tourism-Kohima, Dimapur	8	8	7	6	<b>7.25</b>
Regional Parks at Wokha/Kohima	8	8	6	5	<b>6.75</b>
Heritage Tourism/Circuit	5	5	3	3	<b>4.00</b>
Wildlife Circuit	8	6	4	3	<b>5.25</b>
International Border Circuit	8	6	4	4	<b>5.50</b>
River Tourism Circuit	6	5	4	3	<b>4.50</b>
<b>Overall Average for Nagaland</b>	<b>7.31</b>	<b>6.31</b>	<b>4.25</b>	<b>3.75</b>	<b>5.41</b>

We feel that future picture is quite optimistic. Even considering the limitations of the last two parameters (due to the existing status), the average rating worked out for all major destinations varies between 4.00 and 7.25, whereas overall average for Nagaland works out approx. 5.41 (i.e. Fair).

This provides us confidence to state that once the recommendations of the perspective plan are implemented, the future of Nagaland Tourism will be bright.

## CHAPTER – 8

### FINANCIAL IMPLICATIONS, PRIVATISATION STRATEGY & INSTITUTIONAL FUNDING AVENUES

#### 1. Financial Implications:

The State Government of Nagaland considers the Tourism Department as one of the fastest growing department. The details of the Outlay for the 10<sup>th</sup> Five Year Plan (2002-2007) are not available at present.

**Table No. 10: State Government's Proposed Outlay (General) for the 10<sup>th</sup> Five-Year Plan for Tourism (Rs. In Lakhs):**

S.No.	Years	Plan	Non-Plan	Allotment	Expenditure
1	2001-2002	308.00	82.67	390.67	306.95
2	2002-2003	<b>226.00</b>	<b>134.94</b>	<b>360.94</b>	<b>303.94</b>
3	2003-2004				
4	2004-2005				
5	2005-2006				
6	2006-2007				
Total for 10 <sup>th</sup> Plan	2002-2007				

The above table showing the general outlay for the 10<sup>th</sup> Five Year Plan indicates the State's approach towards Tourism Development in the state. It also indicates the State's financial capacity and potential and also limitations not only for new Tourism Development, but also for the maintenance of the existing infrastructure.

The seriousness and detailed conceptual thought process for the comprehensive tourism development could be revealed through the category wise allocations. We have tried to tabulate the key categories required for the comprehensive and holistic approach. However, the following table will indicate that the major proportion of the budget allocation is towards the staff salaries. There is also some allocation towards the State's share for Centrally Sponsored Schemes (CSS) for infrastructure development. This indicates that at present, Nagaland Tourism is largely dependent on the Central Government assistance and the department cannot afford to think beyond the basic maintenance of their infrastructure.

#### 2. Privatisation Strategy:

The role of the Tourism Department should be to develop the tourism potential in the state by creating infrastructure and developing tourist spots. It should get out of implementation process as early as possible. The privatisation of various facilities with different strategies makes the projects sustainable in a

long run. However, in the present nascent stage, it may not be possible for the department to attract private entrepreneurs who could take risk and invest funds since the tourism market is unpredictable. The Tourism Department will have to prepare its own strategy of sustainability through economic / participatory / collaborative projects for the next ten years. At the same time efforts must be continued to involve the private participation in the creation of infrastructure, through attractive incentives and benefits. A few popular tourist spots could be offered on a BOT basis as an experiment.

**Package of incentives offered by the State Government to attract Private Sector Investments:**

Tourism was a late starter in Nagaland. Tourism had a subordinate status prior to 1981 in Nagaland when it was a part of the Department of Information and Public Relations. Since 1981, the Department of Tourism has been looking after the activities of tourism development in the state. However, insurgency and turbulent socio-political situation in the state for over two decades adversely affected any efforts of the department resulting in negligible tourism in the state. The state government has realised the importance of tourism development as a support to cultural and socio-economic development of the state. Under the State Industrial Policy of Nagaland – 2000, Tourism has been accorded the status of ‘Priority Sector’. Tourism activities have been made eligible for all benefits and subsidies to the industry. Financial assistance for private tourism projects is being organised through various finance corporations. The efforts for privatisation of government infrastructure are also going on. However there have been no responses till now.

The government has given the thrust on the creation of basic infrastructure and amenities required for tourists. This has been done mainly through the assistance provided by the central government. However, the adhoc manner of the destination selection and the lack of appropriate initiative in the successful completion of the projects has resulted in adverse conditions for the infrastructure. Today, most of the infrastructure is either incomplete or non-functional.

In general, the outlook of the state government towards the tourism development is of hesitance for now. This gives wrong signals for private participation and dissuades any possible entrepreneurs to come forward for joint ventures. This must change into the attitude of enthusiasm.

**Package of incentives offered by the Central Government to attract Private Sector Investments:**

The Central Government has adopted a conscious strategy for the Development and Regulation of Tourism Industry with private participation.

A few salient features are as under:

- a) The tourism industry was declared as a **Priority Sector** for foreign investments, as a consequence of economic restructuring and liberalisation of policies. The horizons for foreign investment in the tourism sector were widened and it is eligible for automatic approval of direct foreign investment up to 100 per cent of the equity. Automatic approvals are given for Foreign Technology Agreements and Management Contracts within specified parameters.
- b) An **'Investment Facilitation Cell'** in the Department of Tourism was set up to undertake key activities related to private investments in the tourism industry. Some important activities are:
  - Formulation of national investment policies of tourism industry
  - Co-ordination and integration of State policies on tourism
  - Prepare investment profiles for each State in collaboration with the respective State Governments. These profiles will include information on identified priority centres for tourism development, details of existing infrastructure, expected demand, availability of land and other support services, agencies to be contacted etc.
  - Regular interactions with prospective entrepreneurs both within the country and abroad to promote investment in tourism
  - Establishing linkages with Ministry of External Affairs to highlight investment opportunities in tourism abroad through their investment cell
  - Process investment proposals received from both local and foreign investors and obtain approvals and clearances from various agencies like FIPB, SIA and Environment Ministry etc.
  - Assist the entrepreneurs in getting import licences, finance, land etc. by coordinating with the respective agencies and the State Governments
  - Provide technical assistance wherever required
  - In consultation with State Governments, devise a 'Single Window System' to facilitate investors to obtain various clearances speedily
  - To formulate a statutory framework for identification, creation and establishment of Special Tourism Areas and Mega Tourism Projects for development of tourism infrastructure
  - To coordinate with the **'Investment Promotion and Infrastructure Development Cell'** in the Department of Tourism with regard to infrastructure requirements, facilitation and monitoring of investment in the tourism sector
- c) Considering a large potential of tourism industry as foreign exchange earner, employment generation etc., the Government has accorded **Export House Status** to tourism industry. Hotels, Travel Agents, Tour Operators and Tourist Transport Operators are now entitled for recognition as Export House/Trading House/Star Trading House/ Super

Star Trading House on earning free foreign exchange in accordance with prefixed slabs and shall be entitled to certain benefits.

- d) The endeavour of the Government is to achieve sustained growth of tourist facilities in the private sector and to ensure high standards of quality in their services. Incentives have been made available by the Central Government as under:
- Interest subsidy of 3% on loans taken from financial institutions for 1 to 3 star categories of hotel projects outside the metropolitan cities. A subsidy of 5% is made available to hotel projects located in the Travel Circuits and Destinations identified as per National Action Plan for Tourism. Heritage Hotels are eligible for the higher rate of interest subsidy of 5%. Financial institutions such as ICICI, IDBI and SIDBI have been included in the scheme in addition to TFCI, IFCI and State Finance and Industrial Corporations.
  - As a fiscal incentive, under Section 80 HHD, 50% of profits derived by hotels, travel agents and tour operators in foreign exchange are exempt from income tax. The balance amount of profit in foreign exchange is also exempt provided it is reinvested in tourism projects.
  - The Ministry of Finance has reintroduced Section 80-IA now known as 80-IB for the hotel units located in rural areas, hilly areas and place of pilgrimage. They are allowed 50% exemption in their profits, whereas for the hotels located in other areas (except metropolitan cities) under the same section, the exemption is 30%.
  - Benefits have been made available under Liberalised Exchange Rate Management System (LERMS). Hotels, travel agents, tour operators and other tourism units have been given facility to open and operate Exchange Earners Foreign Currency (EEFC) Account. The procedure for release of foreign exchange for specified purposes has been streamlined and liberalised.
  - Import of special items for hotel industry is permitted subject to import entitlement. Concessional Customs Duty is charged for import of specified goods required for initial setting up of substantial expansion of hotels.
  - A new Export Promotion Capital Goods (EPCG) Scheme has been introduced for the Service Sector, which includes hotels and restaurants, travel agents and tour operators. Under this scheme, capital goods can be imported at a concessional duty of 5% subject to fulfilment of an Export Obligation over a period of time.
- e) The Department of Tourism presents National Tourism Awards and Awards for Excellence for various segments of travel and tourism industry every year. National Tourism Awards are presented to classified hotels including heritage hotels, approved travel agents, tour operators and tourist transport operators in recognition of their performance in their respective fields and also to encourage healthy

competition in order to promote tourism. Awards of Excellence are presented to various other segments of travel and tourism industry.

- f) The State Governments have also been informed about these incentives and are being encouraged and advised to introduce similar incentives at state level to encourage tourism industry and private participation.

#### **Attempts of Privatisation by the state:**

A few existing Tourist establishments are under the process of privatisation. The proposal will be submitted to the government for approval. The details are not yet available from the Nagaland Tourism.

#### **Action Plan for Privatisation:**

- a) Fiscal evaluation of the existing infrastructure on a realistic / business-like manner, according to various categories.
- b) Auction / offer Tourist Lodges to private entrepreneurs / authentic NGOs/ reputed charitable institutions on an appropriate terms and conditions.
- c) Offer restaurants to reputed charitable institutions, particularly Women's organisations for management on lucrative terms and conditions
- d) Offer service oriented infrastructure like booking counters, information booths, STD booths etc. to the deprived sector (educated unemployed, handicapped, women, students etc) in an individual / organisational capacity. This offer could be charitable.
- e) Offer incentives to the existing staff to form co-operatives to run / manage existing Tourist Lodges, Restaurants etc. on reasonable terms and conditions.
- f) Offer new infrastructure development to Village Councils, NGOs, private entrepreneurs etc. on a turnkey basis (BOT i.e. built, operate, transfer), if necessary, even for a long term.
- g) Offer development of smaller infrastructure like wayside amenities, public toilets, tourist transport etc. to existing local entrepreneurs on a lucrative terms and conditions.
- h) Offer financial incentives like interest free loans, soft loans, tax concessions, low lease rent etc. to encourage private participation in the tourism industry
- i) Offer remote area concessions and incentives to private entrepreneurs for the development of tourism destination and infrastructure in the remote regions. These could include free land, partial subsidy for development etc.
- j) Give wide publicity to the schemes being offered for privatisation. Keep the terms of offer lucrative like low/refundable deposits, quick decisions etc.
- k) Protect the long-term government interest by legally safeguarding the terms of offers and agreements. The terms should also ensure long-term maintenance of infrastructure and quality service.
- l) The Department should work out effective strategy to regularly monitor the privatised properties and ensure the quality of service.

### 3. **Governmental Funding Avenues:**

The Tourism Department must try various funding avenues in a process to make the activity economically feasible and sustainable. All proposals / projects must be worked out like business proposals considering all possible projections. The state / central governments may provide limited assistance for the initial gestation period. However, a definite strategy has to be worked out for the long-term maintenance of such facilities.

The other funding avenues should be tapped. Various government departments and organisations provide specialise funding for specific projects related to their activities and tourism sector being a versatile sector could tap these resources.

The Department of Tourism under the aegis of the Ministry of Tourism & Culture supports the most of the tourism development of Nagaland Tourism. However, the collaboration with the sister departments under the same Ministry, namely Archaeology Survey of India and National Culture Fund has not been tried yet by Nagaland Tourism. There is a good potential of joint ventures leading to tourism development.

The Ministry of Environment and Forests finances projects related to Biodiversity, Wildlife, Plant Conservation etc. and the Central Zoo Authority provides funds for zoo related projects. Since the emphasis of Nagaland Tourism is going to be on Eco-tourism, this ministry could be a major sponsor/partner. The Ministry of non-conventional Energy Sources and the Ministry of Science & Technology could also support many activities and parameters under Eco-tourism development.

The tourism projects, particularly the large/unique projects, proposed under the Perspective Plan are of wide range. They come under varied parameters like rural development, agriculture, tribal development, education, science & technology, heritage conservation, adventure sports, information technology etc. There are Ministries specifically working for the development under these parameters and specific funds are allotted to these ministries under the Five Year Plan. These allocations are at the Central and the State level. The Nagaland Tourism should make special efforts to coordinate with these ministries for the specific projects, which combine the interests of both. The Project Proposals need to be designed and worked out in detail and appropriate to the needs of the Ministry requirements. These could be developed as joint projects.

#### **Some of the Ministries at the Central Government, which could be approached for various tourism projects, are as under:**

Ministry of Agriculture- Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), Indian Institute of Horticultural Research (IIHR), Krishi Vigyan Kendra (KVK), Water Technology Centre for Eastern Region

Ministry of Commerce & Industries- Agricultural & Processed Food Products Exports Development Authority (APEDA), Industrial Institute of Foreign Trade (IIFT), India Trade Promotion Organisation (ITPO)

Ministry of Communication & Information Technology- National Information Centre (NIC), Department of Tele Communication (DOT)

Ministry of Defence- Defence Research & Development Organisation (DRDO), GREF

Ministry of Environment & Forests- Central Zoo Authority (CZI), Botanical Survey of India (BSI), Zoological Survey of India (ZSI), Medicinal Plant Board, Forest Development Agencies (Joint Forest Management Committees & Eco-development Committees)

Ministry of Health & Family Welfare- Department of Indian Systems of Medicine & Homeopathy

Ministry of Home Affairs- Northeast Council (NEC)

Ministry of Human Resource Development- Department of Education, Department of Women & Child Development

Ministry of Information & Broadcasting  
Ministry of Non-conventional Energy Sources- Indian Renewable Energy Development Agency Ltd. (IREDA)

Ministry of Road Transport & Highway

Ministry of Rural Development- Council of Advancement of People's Action & Rural Technology (CAPART), National Institute of Rural Development (NIRD)

Ministry of Science & Technology- Department of Science and Industrial Research, Institute of Himalayan Bio-resources Technology (IHBT)  
Ministry of Small Scale Industries & Agro & Rural Industries

Ministry of Textiles- Handloom Export Promotion Council (HEPC), Handicraft & Handloom Export Corporation (HHEC)  
Ministry of Tourism & Culture- Archaeological Survey of India, National Culture Fund, Department of Tourism

Ministry of Tribal Affairs

Ministry of Water Resources

Ministry of Youth Affairs & Sports

#### 4. Institutional Funding Avenues:

There are many national and international organisations / universities which are interested in long term ecological research and appropriate development in the regions like Northeast. The tourist infrastructure could be also used for such complementary activities and made sustainable. Nagaland has tremendous potential to attract private investments in tourism sectors. However it will depend on the other factors adversely affecting the Northeast region.

The state government has already identified tourism as an industry. Now it must begin to treat the tourism sector like a public sector industry. The national and international organisations and funding agencies have a professional and business like approach. They ensure soundness of the proposals, integrity of the project leader and the team, technical and financial viability of the project etc. They also monitor the progress of the project during the implementation. The success rate is generally good in these types of arrangements due to mutual interest and control. However, the approach to generate such funding has to be high quality and professional. The State Government needs to invest reasonable seed capital for the preparation of sound and comprehensive Project Proposal understanding the minute details of the project and also the fundamental approach and philosophy of the donor agency. This preparation of Project Proposal needs to be handled professionally and the consultants should be able to explain and convince the funding agencies about the viability of the project.

In case of International funding agencies, the process will be more complex. Many times the Project Proposals need to be developed as joint and collaborative projects. The approval of the Ministry of External Affairs and the Ministry of Home Affairs becomes mandatory. There are many collaborative projects going on in the country in different sectors and the success rate seems to be reasonably good. The Tourism Sector should also try for these funding possibilities, particularly for large, innovative and unique projects where such collaborative approach would be viable and sustainable. Here again, the technical and financial viability of the project and the project's uniqueness from the point of the interest of the funding agency becomes the key issue. This needs professional approach at basic planning stage and the state government must invest reasonable seed capital for this purpose.

The Department of Tourism, Government of India has already established strategy for **International Co-operation for Tourism Development**. The efforts of interactions with International Organisations have been initiated and there have been several meetings of officials to discuss and sort out various issues in the year 2001 e.g. Human Resources & Development (Geneva, Switzerland), Pacific Asia Travel Association (PATA) Annual Conference (Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia), World Tourism Organisation Commission of South Asia Region (Male, Maldives), Satellite Accounting (Vancouver, Canada), EIBTM meeting (Geneva, Switzerland), Strategic Group of WTO (Geneva, Switzerland), PATA Board meeting (Taipei, Taiwan), WTO General

Assembly ( Seoul, Korea), Tourism India 2001 conference (Singapore), International Travel Mart (Kunming, China), World Travel Mart (London). There have been also efforts to arrive at **Bilateral and Multilateral Cooperation Agreements** with various countries and a few important achievements have been made e.g. South Asia Joint Marketing and Promotion Action Plan for tourism, India-Singapore Joint Task Force, Indo-Italian Joint Working Group on Tourism etc. A large collaborative project, ‘**Ajanta - Ellora Conservation and Tourism Development Project**’, with external assistance of the Japanese Bank of International Cooperation (JBIC) is currently under progress. The Department of Tourism should encourage and advise the State Governments for Bilateral and Multilateral Collaborative assistance for specific and large Tourism Development Projects in the State.

The Institutional Funding Agencies may be classified under the following categories:

**National Non Governmental Organisations (NGOs)**

**International NGOs**

**International Government Agencies**

**Inter Governmental Organisations (IGOs)**

Many agencies in these categories have been implementing various Collaborative Projects in different states of India. These bilateral / multilateral collaborations are with government / semi-government agencies and also with the NGOs. These projects are in different fields like environment, development, health, social welfare, education, rural development, agriculture, science and technology etc. The Mizoram Tourism should work out the Tourism Projects with such diverse and comprehensive manner, so that these types of collaborations become possible. It may be noted that these projects are large and the success rate is quite high. A few ongoing examples of such projects, which could be tied up with Tourism Development:

- Basic Health Programme – Indo-German Development Co-operation - Maharashtra
- Conservation Education Project – Overseas Development Administration – Mumbai
- Lake Restoration and Development – Indo-Norwegian Project – Bangalore
- Mangrove Park – Godrej Foundation – Mumbai
- NEPED – Indo-Canadian Project – Nagaland
- Project Tiger – World Wide Fund for Nature – 16 National Parks in different states of India
- Bangalore Agenda Task Force for Urban Development & Beautification – Infosys Foundation – Bangalore
- Wildlife Research Projects – US Fish & Wildlife Department – Various parts of India

The modalities of such collaborative projects depend on the philosophy of the funding agency and also the nature of the specific project. However, the professionalism and integrity are the key essential factors. Mizoram Tourism should try to avail these possibilities and being a government department such collaborations and successful implementation looks distinctly possible.

A list of few Institutional Agencies is given hereunder:

### **National Non Governmental Organisations (NGOs)**

Infosys Foundation  
Pirojsha Godrej foundation  
Reliance Foundation  
J.R.D. Tata Trust  
Tata Sons Ltd. & various Trusts  
Wildlife Trust of India  
K. Mahindra Foundation

### **International NGOs**

Aga Khan Foundation  
Asia Pacific Foundation of Canada  
Asian Cultural Council  
AT & T Foundation  
Aurora Foundation  
Environmental Trust  
Ford Foundation  
Foundation for Deep Ecology  
Gates Foundation  
Global Conservation Fund (Gordon & Betty Moore Foundation)  
Goldman Environment Foundation  
International Fund for Animal Welfare  
Kellogg Foundation  
MacArther Foundation  
National Geographic Foundation  
Paul Getty Allen Forest Protection Foundation  
Paul Getty Trust  
Smithsonian Institute  
The Asia Foundation  
The Carnegie Foundation  
The Rockefeller Foundation  
World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF), International

## **International Government Agencies**

ASEAN

Department of Environmental Research & Social Sciences, Germany

European Union

German Ministry of Development Co-operation

National Environment Research Council (NERC), UK

Netherlands Development Organisation

Netherlands Organisation for Scientific Research (Earth & Life Science)

Swiss National Foundation, Switzerland

The Research Council of Norway (Environment & Development)

The Swedish Research Council for Environment, Agriculture & Spatial

Planning, Sweden

The United States Agency for International Development (USAID)

United Kingdom Department of International Development

United States Department of Fish & Wildlife

US Global Change Research Programme, USA

## **Inter Governmental Organisations (IGOs)**

Conservation International

Danish International Development Assistance (DANIDA)

Department for International Development (DFID), UK

Environment Programme of European Commission

Environment Protection Agency, USA

Global Environment Facility (GEF)

India Canada Environment Facility (ICEF)

Indo-Dutch Programme on Alternatives in Development (IDPAD)

Indo-Norwegian Environment Programme (INEP)

International Bank for Reconstruction & Development (IBRD)

International Relations Council (Social Science & Humanities Research),  
Canada

International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN)

Japanese Bank for International Co-operation (JBIC)

National Natural Science Foundation of China

Overseas Development Administration (ODA)

The Canadian International Development Agency (CIDA)

The United Nations Children's Fund (UNCF)

The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)

The United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)

The United Nations Education, Scientific and Cultural Organisation  
(UNESCO)

The United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP)

The United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA)

## 5. Modalities of Funding:

The above-mentioned funding agencies have their own norms and modalities for funding. Most of them have their own specific interests in the areas to provide funding e.g. environment, forests, water, infrastructure, heritage, education, tourism, rural development, women's empowerment etc. Generally all funding agencies have their own formats of application for the funding. They also have time frames and schedules. Most of the funding agencies prefer to collaborate with the Government Departments, however they also like to involve NGOs and also look for people's participation. International Funding Applications need to be routed through the Ministry of External Affairs and also the Central Government Ministries related to the Projects.

The international funding agencies have different approaches. Some provide funding in a form of Grant and also technical know-how / human resources etc. These are collaborative projects, bilateral or multilateral. The ODA and European Union provide funding in this manner. These are generally long term projects (5 to 10 years) and the funding agencies regularly monitor the progress of the project through their own consultants / specialised institutions. These agencies generally provide 100% funding on the cost estimates worked out jointly, however they ensure the commitment of the grantee to look after, maintain and continue the project in future. The agreements / MOUs ensure these clauses for the commitment. These agencies also ensure the participation of the grantee in the form of existing infrastructure including human resources, land etc. at the beginning of the project.

The Nagaland Tourism could attempt to get such funding for following specific projects:

1. Phokhungri / Shilloi Lake Region International Collaborative, Eco-Tourism, Heritage and Cultural Integration Project
2. Handicraft Centre at Mon-Tuensang / Dimapur
3. Agriculture Centre at Khonoma as a Rural Development & Women's Empowerment Project
4. Cultural Tourism Centres at International / National tri-junctions as Cultural Integration Project
5. Mt. Saramati International Biosphere Reserve
6. Dzukou Valley and Bird Sanctuaries at Changtonya, Ghoshu as Adventure and Eco-Tourism Project

There are other funding agencies, which are basically financial institutions like Asian Development Bank (ADB), Overseas Economic Corporate Fund (OEFC), now JBIC, International Monetary fund (IMF) etc. These agencies provide soft loans for mostly development projects. They have their own parameters to decide about the eligibility components. Such funding is generally provided to the Government Departments and there are standard norms of sureties for repayments etc. They also insist for proportionate investment / participation from the recipient. For example, the JBIC provides financial assistance in a form of soft loan up to maximum 85% of the total

project costs. The eligible components for JBIC are Land Cost, Infrastructure Development Cost, Compensation / Rehabilitation cost, Duties & Taxes, Interest during the implementation of the project etc. These loans are provided to the State Government Departments on the approval of the Ministry of External Affairs. Most of the times, 30% of the approved amount is provided as Grant and 70% as Loan. This type of funding is very useful for tourism development projects, wherein the State Governments do not have financial resources to develop the basic tourism infrastructure and at the same time, once such an infrastructure is created they can start generating revenue on a regular basis. However, the state government will need to provide the seed money to the extent of 15% of the project cost

The Nagaland Tourism could attempt to get such funding for following specific projects:

1. Urban Tourism i.e. development of Kohima and Dimapur
2. Regional Parks at Wokha and Kohima
3. Development of Tourism Infrastructure i.e. roads & services at the tourist destinations, signage etc.
4. Computerisation of tourism services, Publicity infrastructure, Capacity Building etc.
5. Cultural Centres in other parts of the country

## CHAPTER – 9

### TOURISM ECONOMICS, COST BENEFIT ANALYSIS AND EMPLOYMENT GENERATION

#### 1. Tourism Economics:

Tourism is today the world's largest industry, with the Travel and Tourism (T & T) Industry and T & T Economy respectively contributing 4.2% and 10.7% of global GDP. Tourism is also the highest generator of jobs, with the T & T Economy accounting for 8.2% of total employment or 1 in every 12.2 jobs. By 2011, over 50 million additional jobs will be created by the T & T Economy. No wonder then that Tourism has been described as 'one of the most remarkable economic and social phenomena of the last century'.

International Tourist Arrivals in 2000 reached 698 million with International Tourism Receipts of US \$ 476 billion, with International Fare Receipts accounting for a further 20% of receipts. Tourism is the single largest and fastest growing category of international trade, accounting for 12.8% of total exports. It is one of the Top 5 export categories for 83% of countries and the main source of foreign exchange for 38%. The potential for international tourism is vast as today only 3.5% of the world's population travels internationally.

The World Tourism Organisation (WTO) estimates that the scale of world domestic tourism far exceeds world international tourism, by a ratio of 10:1.

The forecasting study undertaken by the World Tourism and Travel Council (WTTC) indicates that between 2001 and 2011:

- Global Gross Domestic Product (GDP) will increase from 10.7 % to 11 %
- Global employment contribution will increase from 207.1 million to 260.4 million jobs or 9 % of total global employment
- The global value of tourism related exports will increase from US \$ 1,063.8 billion to US \$ 2,538.3 billion or 12.8 % of global export value
- Global capital investment in tourism will increase from US \$ 657.7 billion to US \$ 1,434 billion or 9.3 % of global investment

Forecast data from the WTO shows that the share of tourism volumes and related receipts, GDP, employment and export earnings is expected to move away from the developed countries towards the less developed countries as a result of favourable economic, motivational, technological and policy factors.

**WTTC's status paper 'The India Imperative' has analysed India tourism in the light of the latest Tourism Satellite Accounting Research (TSA), 2001 and projections for the year 2011. WTCC has identified India as one of the foremost growth centres in the world in the coming decade.**

## **2. Role of Tourism in National Socio-economical Development:**

In 2000, India received 2.64 million international arrivals and had an estimated 210 million domestic tourists, a ratio of 1:80. Of this demand, however, Rs. 250 billion results from international tourism to India, while Rs, 912 billion is generated domestically, a ratio of 1:3.65.

While India's receipts from international tourism at \$ 3, 168 million in 2000 rank it 29<sup>th</sup> in the world, India accounts for just 0.67% of world tourism receipts from international arrivals.

In 2001, total tourism exports (visitor and non-visitor) in India are expected to generate Rs. 308 billion or 9.5% of total Indian exports as compared to a world average of 12.9% and India ranks 31<sup>st</sup> in the world.

In 2001, T & T in India will generate Rs. 1,564 billion of economic activity (total demand), making India the 22<sup>nd</sup> largest tourism market in the world, ahead of competitors such as Thailand, Malaysia, Indonesia and Egypt. Yet, India accounts for only 0.74% of world demand.

The contribution of the T & T Economy to GDP is impressive in dollar terms. This is due to the sheer size and scale of travel in the country (India ranks 17<sup>th</sup> in world). The potential contribution of tourism to India's GDP as seen today is at 5.3% as compared to the world average of 10.7%, and India ranks 140 in the world when tourism's contribution to GDP is measured. Similarly, despite a world rank of 15, the T & T Industry in India contributes 2.5% of GDP as compared to a world average of 4.2%, ranks 124 in terms of percentage contribution to GDP.

In terms of employment, India's T & T Economy accounts for 25 million jobs (World Rank 2). This translates to a share of 6% of all employment, giving India a rank of 140. The Department of Tourism's estimates of T & T Industry jobs are 4.2 million. This has been derived based on a study conducted in 1985-86, which derived the multiplier effect of the tourism industry. Similarly, despite employment of 12.3 million and a world rank of 2, the T & T Industry in India contributes 2.9% of total employment as compared to a world average of 3.1% and ranks 111 in terms of percentage contribution to total employment.

Tourism can play an important, pioneering and effective role in achieving the growth targets set out for the nation. The primary objective of tourism development in India is to accelerate economic growth significantly, so as to meet a series of socio-economic imperative that are unique to India.

Tourism is one economic sector in India that has the capacity to maximise the productivity of the country's enormous natural, human and technological assets and resources. It has the capacity to capitalise on the country's success in the services sector and provide sustainable economic growth over the longer term, offsetting in optimum performance in other economic sectors due either to domestic or global economic or political circumstances.

Tourism is recognised as having the potential to stimulate most economic sectors through its tremendous backward and forward linkages and cross-sectoral synergies. Its most apparent benefits are across the entire retail trade, and in particular in a variety of cottage industries, handicrafts, arts and agriculture. Its benefits for widespread national economic integration are immeasurable.

Tourism can provide the greatly increased revenues and incomes required to achieve the country's central social objective of significant improvement to human well-being and the quality of life of all our people. The economic benefits that flow into the economy through tourism as increased national and state revenues, business receipts, employment, wages and salary income, and central, state and local tax receipts, which contribute to the social upliftment of the country.

Tourism development, through accelerated and sustainable economic growth, can contribute to the equitable development of the country and the removal of disparities. The income benefits of tourism can spread geographically, particularly to rural areas. Tourism offers employment to women, youth, the disadvantaged and weaker sections of society, the disabled and tribal communities. Tourism can support social equity and stability.

Tourism can enhance the country's international image and prestige, strengthen its standing in the international community and foster greater international understanding. It forms part of the country's economic agenda and improves the overall climate for foreign investment.

95% of tourism businesses are small and medium scale enterprises (SMEs) and tourism could be a great supporter of entrepreneurship, cottage industries and economic diversity in rural areas.

Tourism is an export industry and can achieve the acceleration of economic growth by tapping the opportunities afforded by the international economy, thus providing valuable hard currency for imports and reducing the imbalance in trade and payments, Its limited leakage (7 %) makes it the most valuable contributor to India's international trade and vital ingredient to India's integration with the global economy.

Tourism being labour intensive promotes new employment, which is not only large in scale but also of a high quality that can support a higher quality of life.

Tourism has the capacity to stimulate widespread direct private sector investment, both domestic and foreign. In particular for India, SMEs are recognised to play a vital role in industrialisation.

### 3. Present Economics of Nagaland Tourism

The main sources of finances for the tourism development in the state are from the normal annual budget of the state and the central financial assistance for the definite projects (appendices – m, q).

Table No. 11: State budget for the tourism development for the years 1993-1994 to 2002-2003 (Source: Dept. of Tourism, Nagaland):

S. No.	Years	Category	Allotment	Expenditure
1	1993-94	Plan	108.00	104.21
		Non-plan	42.00	32.73
		Total	150.00	136.94
2	1994-95	Plan	132.00	31.98
		Non-plan	72.96	70.51
		Total	204.96	102.49
3	1995-96	Plan	132.00	121.45
		Non-plan	50.30	48.10
		Total	182.30	169.55
4	1996-97	Plan	245.00	249.44
		Non-plan	49.28	44.64
		Total	303.28	294.08
5	1997-98	Plan	263.00	79.18
		Non-plan	65.23	56.22
		Total	328.23	118.30
6	1998-99	Plan	263.00	215.34
		Non-plan	62.65	56.22
		Total	325.65	271.56
7	1999-2000	Plan	263.00	203.23
		Non-plan	66.39	57.49
		Total	329.39	260.39
8	2000-2001	Plan	305.00	176.80
		Non-plan	73.34	61.13
		Total	378.34	237.93
9	2001-2002	Plan	308.00	246.07
		Non-plan	82.67	60.88
		Total	390.67	306.95
10	2002-2003	Plan	226.00	169.00
		Non-plan	134.94	134.94
		Total	360.94	303.94

The details of the expenditure (2000-2001) on the maintenance of the existing infrastructure are not available at present.

The Department of Tourism collects revenue from the room rents and food costs at the tourist infrastructure run by the department. This amounts to approx. Rs. 150 to Rs. 250 Lakhs, which is credited to the government revenue every year (appendix – f).

The rates fixed by the department for the amenities provided by them are very reasonable and are based on the rates prevailing in the region. This rationale looks fine since tourists are using the amenities regularly.

The Nagaland Tourism has some staff as permanent. Additionally there is temporary staff employed from time to time on contract / daily wage basis. The recurring expenditure of staff salaries is met from the State Budget. The details of present annual budget allocation towards the staff salaries are not available at present.

The state entirely depends on the central assistance for the creation of tourism infrastructure.

#### **4. Future Economics of Nagaland Tourism**

The Perspective Plan for the tourism development has been worked out with an objective to make the tourism industry in the state very sustainable. Over the years, it must become a self-supporting industry.

The proposal of the Perspective Plan as worked out is economically feasible. It is generally envisaged that there will be average 10 % annual increase in the tourist traffic due to these overall efforts. However, the present condition of Nagaland Tourism is very low and tourist traffic has declined over the last few years at the rate of about 25 % per year. The Nagaland Tourism Department will have to put in tremendous efforts for the implementation of this perspective plan effectively. The state government will need to spruce up the Tourism Department immediately. All these efforts may stabilise the tourist in the initial 5 years and then it may increase at the rate of 5 % per year. It may boost further more to about 10 % per year after 15 years. The overall increase by 100 % in the next 15 years will itself stabilise the Nagaland Tourism. At present level also, they have almost managed to cover the recurring costs on maintenance. The strategies recommended in the perspective plan will ensure that Nagaland Tourism will eventually work as a catalyst for tourism development and its administrative and management costs will be within the profits generated from the tourism in the state.

The other additional benefits of the tourism development for the state of Nagaland will act as incentives to further the tourism activities with private participation.

**We feel that the Perspective Plan will be economically feasible and will stabilise the Tourism Department. It will also make the Tourism Development in Nagaland sustainable. It will provide great impetus for overall socio-economic development of the state of Nagaland in a short time.**

## **5. Cost Benefit Analysis – Tourism in Nagaland**

A few norms (Source: Trade in Tourism Services) to work out Cost – Benefits from the tourism development are as under:

- a) Hotel Rooms: For 10 lakhs tourists (with average length of stay 10 nights, 65 % average annual occupancy, 1.4 guests per room) annual bed nights available per room will be 332. The number of rooms required will be 30,107. The average cost (all inclusive) per room will be Rs. 15 lakhs.

Employment generation: Direct – 2 persons per room, Indirect – 3 persons per room. Thus 30,127 rooms will generate direct employment for 60,214 persons and indirect employment for 90,321 persons making total employment for 1,50,534 persons.

- b) Air Transport: For 10 lakh tourists (with average distance 8000 km., annual 265 round trips, 400 seats per aircraft, 65 % load factor, 260 passengers per aircraft, 50 % foreign tourists) number of aircraft required will be 29. The average cost per aircraft will be Rs. 752.5 Crores

Employment generation: Average 450 persons per aircraft

- c) Foreign Exchange: For 10 lakh tourists (with average foreign tourist spend US \$ 1100, 10 % import leakage, 50 % tourists for aviation, average travel per tourist 16,000 km, average rate US \$ 0.10 per km., import leakage 45 %) average foreign exchange earning from visitor spending will be US \$ 9900 lakhs i.e. Rs. 4,356 Crores and from aviation US \$ 4400 lakhs i.e. Rs. 1936 Crores

These norms need to be appropriately amended for the Northeast State like Nagaland considering the ground realities. The costs and benefits for Nagaland Tourism according to the modified version could be like this:

- Hotel Rooms: For 10 lakhs tourists (with average length of stay 8 nights, 40 % average annual occupancy, 1.5 guests per room) annual bed nights available per room will be approx. 400) The number of rooms required will be approx. 15000. The average cost (all inclusive) per room will be Rs. 10 lakhs.

**Over the next 20 years (2002 to 2021) the expected number of tourists in Nagaland ranges between 12, 000 and 45, 000 and the subsequent need of rooms ranges between 350 and 1000 (see chapter 7). Thus the investments will range from Rs. 35 Crores in 2002 and Rs. 100 Crores in 2021. Most of this investment will be in private sector.**

Employment generation: Direct – 2 persons per room, Indirect – 4 persons per room. Thus 350 to 1000 rooms will generate direct employment for 700 to 2000 persons and indirect employment for 1400 to 4,000 persons making the **total employment for 2100 to 6,000 persons over the next 20 years**

- Air Transport: For 10 lakhs tourists (with average distance 2000 km., annual 200 round trips, 200 seats per aircraft, 50 % load factor, 100 passengers per aircraft, 10 % foreign tourists) number of aircraft required will be 10. The average cost per aircraft will be Rs. 500 Crores.

As per the requirements of Nagaland, the need for 12,000 tourists in 2001 to 45,000 in 2021 will be 1 to 2 aircrafts. These could also be shared with the adjoining Northeast states. **Thus the investment will range from Rs. 500 Crores in 2002 to Rs.1000 Crores in 2021.**

**Employment Generation: Average 450 persons per aircraft. Thus 450 to 900 persons may be employed between 2002 and 2021.**

- Other Transport (Railway & Road): The majority of the tourists will depend on these transport system. Intra state transport will be also through these means. The needs for the number of tourists from 12,000 to 45,000 over the next 20 years will be approximately 1 % per day. Thus approximate requirements will be 3 buses (2/3 passengers) and 10 jeeps/taxis (1/3 passengers) in 2002, increasing to 12 buses and 40 jeeps/taxis in 2021. **The investment will range from Rs. 150 lakhs (2002) to Rs. 600 lakhs (2021)**

Employment Generation: Average 6 persons per bus and 3 persons per jeep/taxi. **Thus approximately 50 to 200 persons may get employment in this sector between 2002 and 2021. This employment will be mostly for local people.**

The requirements of investment in the development of rail linkage and subsequent employment generation cannot be predicted at this stage, however it will be considerably economical venture.

- Foreign Exchange: For 10 lakhs tourists, average foreign exchange earning from visitor spending will be US \$ 9900 lakhs i.e. Rs. 4,356 Crores and from aviation US \$ 4400 lakhs i.e. Rs. 1936 Crores. At present the number of foreign tourists to Nagaland is very negligible (approx. 0.5 %). With more emphasis on the tourism development and conscious efforts to attract

foreign tourists this may improve to 5 % after the first 10 years. **Thus foreign exchange earning will be to the tune of Rs. 0.5 Crore (visitor spending) and Rs. 0.2 Crore (aviation) in 2012, which may increase to Rs. 1 Crore (visitor spending) and Rs. 0.4 Crore (aviation) in 2021.**

This may look negligible but the importance of foreign exchange earnings goes much beyond the figures and special efforts must be made to improve this position.

The overall costing of the Tourism Development in Nagaland under this 20 years perspective plan has been worked out as Block Estimate in the chapter 13. The total outlay of the Perspective Plan over the next 20 years (2002 – 2021), amounts to Rs. 350 Crores, i.e. approximately Rs. 17.5 Crores per year. The Perspective Plan proposal envisages about 30 % investment from the Government (Central and State) Sector and 70 % investment from the private sector. The Projects will be self-supporting, thus taking care of the recurring costs and future maintenance and up-gradation costs. The growth rate will be low in the preliminary years (up to 10 years), however depending on the initiative and other socio-economic conditions in the Northeast region, the growth rate could increase substantially and the state will accrue all the benefits.

Some benefits are direct and could be quantified. However, in the tourism sector major benefits are indirect and cannot be quantified at a preliminary stage. A few salient benefits are as under:

- It has been estimated that in tourism sector, the investment of Rs. 10 lakhs creates about 58 jobs. Thus Nagaland Tourism has potential to create approx. 10000 jobs every year, on the implementation of the Perspective Plan.
- In addition to the job/employment generation directly in the tourism sector, the tourism development also creates opportunities for self-employment in service sector e.g. booking counters, information counters, STD booths, Cyber centres, tourist guides, tourism transport, taxi service, courier service etc.
- Tourism as a source of income is not easy to measure because of the multiplier effect. The flow of money generated by tourist spending multiplies as it passes through various sections of the economy through the operation of the multiplier effect.
- Tourism Development opens avenues for tourist destination development and also the surrounding region enhancement. This gives opportunity for small entrepreneurs to initiate business like fast food stalls, handicraft centres, village resorts, landscape contractors, civil contractors etc.

- Tourism Development becomes ongoing process and provides opportunities to professional consultants to provide their skills/expertise in an innovative way e.g. graphic designers, commercial artists, landscape designers, architects, script writers, film/documentary producers, web designers etc.
- Tourism development opens avenues of socio-economic development in rural and backward areas.
- Tourists contribute to tax revenues both directly through sales tax and indirectly through property, profits and income tax.
- In general, tourism development brings in the feeling of cultural pride and at the same time brings in social and cultural integration with the national and international communities.
- Due to diverse positive effects of tourism development the overall infrastructure, socio-economics, commerce and environment of the state and the region also gets impetus.
- The emphasis in tourism development like Eco-tourism, Heritage conservation, Wildlife tourism, adventure tourism etc. brings in the sense of environmental conservation in the society.

## **6. Employment Generation from Tourism Development in Nagaland**

There is great potential for creating enormous number of new jobs through travel and tourism. The employment potential is the highest in the tourism sector as compared to any other sector and India has the potential to more than triple its travel and tourism jobs. WTTC had estimated that in the year 1999 travel and tourism was expected to generate almost 200 million jobs across the world economy. It further expected that over 8 % of all jobs worldwide would depend on travel and tourism in 1999 and that the industry would support the creation of over 5.5 million jobs per year over the next decade. In this decade up to 2010, employment in travel and tourism is expected to grow at 2.6 % per annum.

The majority of jobs associated with travel and tourism tend to come in the form of direct service jobs in tourist related facilities and attractions at the destinations and in tourist generating areas. However, the bulk of the jobs are in tourist destinations e.g. accommodation sector, travel intermediaries, restaurants, shops, travel enterprises etc. In addition, employment opportunities are also available in other sectors, such as manufacturing and transport services, banking, agriculture and fisheries. Many of these jobs are created in backward areas where few employment opportunities are available.

Tourism Industry is a highly labour intensive service industry and is a valuable source of employment. It employs large number of people and provides a wide range of jobs which extend from the unskilled to the highly specialises. In addition to those involved in management, there are a large number of

specialist personnel required to work as accountants, housekeepers, waiters, cooks and entertainers who in turn need large number of semi skilled workers such as porters, chambermaids, kitchen staff, gardeners etc. Tourism is also responsible for creating employment outside the industry such as furnishing and equipment industry, souvenir industry, textile and handicraft industry, farming and food supply and also construction industry.

Thus to quantify employment potential of tourism development in a region is not easy and here also Employment Multiplier effect has to be considered.

The tourism industry has a very strong linkage to socio-economic progress of the country. It has a very high revenue capital ratio. It is estimated that an investment of Rs. 10 lakhs creates 47 direct jobs and 11 indirect jobs, which far surpasses the employment potential from Agricultural and Industrial sector.

- The total outlay of the Perspective Plan over the next 20 years (2002 – 2021), amounts to Rs. 350 Crores, i.e. approximately Rs. 17.5 Crores per year.
- It has been estimated that in tourism sector, the investment of Rs. 10 lakhs creates about 58 jobs. Thus Nagaland Tourism has potential to create approx. 10000 jobs every year, on the implementation of the Perspective Plan.
- In addition to the job/employment generation directly in the tourism sector, the tourism development also creates opportunities for self-employment in service sector e.g. booking counters, information counters, STD booths, Cyber centres, tourist guides, tourism transport, taxi service, courier service etc. The effect of Employment Multiplier will be enormous in the underdeveloped state like Nagaland.
- There will be tremendous opportunity in the secondary employment sector, which provides bulk, services to tourism industry e.g. construction industry, farming and food production, furnishing and equipment suppliers, professionals and consultants etc.

The present status of economy of Nagaland is quite dismal. The basic economy is based on agriculture, which is seasonal and unpredictable. The other sector that provides employment opportunities is the Government Service Sector, which also has stagnated. The state does not have potential for industrial development to provide large employment opportunities. Even the business opportunities are limited due to the geographical isolation of the state from the country and also due to socio-economic problems of the region. Nagaland has tremendous natural resources and they need to be conserved for its overall enhancement in a long term. Considering all these factors, Tourism Development based on strong emphasis of Eco-tourism will be the best opportunity for the socio-economical upliftment of the state of Nagaland.

## 7. Year wise projections of the Direct / Indirect benefits & Employment Generation

### a) Direct Benefits:

This is the net value addition due to the increased tourist spending as a result of increased number of tourist arrivals in the state. Due to the creation of additional facilities and infrastructure, the average expenditure of a tourist would increase. The spending pattern of the tourist is assumed to remain unchanged during the plan period. The amounts spent by the tourists are the receipts, which form the direct output of the plan.

The factors to compute the direct benefits are as under:

- The number of foreign tourists is very negligible (1%) and may not change without special efforts. Therefore the combined average expenditure is worked out
- The projected tourist arrivals in the state as a result of interventions is as shown at the table no. 8 – Trends & Projections of Tourist Arrivals in Chapter 7
- Average per day per capita expenditure of tourists (domestic/foreign combined) in Nagaland is estimated as Rs. 2000/-
- Average duration of stay of tourist is assumed to be 5 days
- The percentage change in the Whole Sale Price (WSP) Index is assumed as 5% per year

Table 12: Average Per Capita Per Day Tourist Expenditure:

Year	% Change of WSP	Average Per Capita Expenditure (Rs.)
2002-03	5 %	2000
2003-04	5 %	2100
2004-05	5 %	2205
2005-06	5 %	2315
2006-07	5 %	2431
2007-08	5 %	2553
2008-09	5 %	2680
2009-10	5 %	2814
2010-11	5 %	2955
2011-12	5 %	3103
2012-13	5 %	3258
2013-14	5 %	3421
2014-15	5 %	3592
2015-16	5 %	3771
2016-17	5 %	3960
2017-18	5 %	4158
2018-19	5 %	4366
2019-20	5 %	4584
2020-21	5 %	4813
2021-22	5 %	5054

**Table 13: Direct Economic Benefit from Projected Tourist Arrivals:**  
(For Direct Value Added, factor 0.3854 is considered. Source: Dr. Raveendran, 1993)

<b>Year</b>	<b>Tourist Inflow</b>	<b>Expenditure per Tourist for 5 days</b>	<b>Direct Receipts (Rs. Crores)</b>	<b>Direct Value Added (Factor 0.3854) Rs, Crores</b>	<b>Direct Benefit (Rs. Crores)</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6 (4+5)</b>
2002-03	12000	5 x 2000	12.00	4.62	16.62
2003-04	13200	5 x 2100	13.86	5.34	19.20
2004-05	14520	5 x 2205	16.00	6.16	22.16
2005-06	15972	5 x 2315	18.48	7.12	25.60
2006-07	17569	5 x 2431	21.35	8.22	29.57
2007-08	19326	5 x 2553	24.66	9.50	34.16
2008-09	21258	5 x 2680	28.48	10.97	39.45
2009-10	23384	5 x 2814	32.90	12.67	45.57
2010-11	25723	5 x 2955	38.00	14.64	52.64
2011-12	28295	5 x 3103	43.89	16.91	60.80
2012-13	31124	5 x 3258	50.70	19.53	70.23
2013-14	34237	5 x 3421	58.56	22.56	81.12
2014-15	37661	5 x 3592	67.63	26.06	93.69
2015-16	41427	5 x 3771	78.11	30.10	108.21
2016-17	45569	5 x 3960	90.22	34.77	124.99
2017-18	50125	5 x 4158	104.20	40.15	144.35
2018-19	55138	5 x 4366	120.36	46.38	166.74
2019-20	60652	5 x 4584	139.01	53.57	192.58
2020-21	66717	5 x 4813	160.55	61.87	222.42
2021-22	73389	5 x 5054	185.45	71.47	256.92

b) Indirect Benefits:

The Indirect Benefits arise out of the multiplier effect of tourist spending as different segments of the tourist industry purchase commodities and services from other sectors of economy. The additional output produced in other sectors of the economy by the chain of inter-industry spending is the indirect output of tourism. The indirect benefits can be computed by using the output multiplier as 1.058 and income multiplier as 1.412 (Source: Dr. Raveendran, 1993).

Table 14: Indirect Economic Benefits from Projected Tourist Arrivals (In Rs. Crores):

Year	Direct Receipts	Direct Value Added	Output Col.2 X 1.058	Value Added Col.3 X 1.412	Total Col. 4 + Col. 5
1	2	3	4	5	6
2002-03	12.00	4.62	12.69	6.52	19.21
2003-04	13.86	5.34	14.66	7.54	22.20
2004-05	16.00	6.16	16.92	8.69	25.61
2005-06	18.48	7.12	19.55	10.05	29.60
2006-07	21.35	8.22	22.58	11.60	34.18
2007-08	24.66	9.50	26.09	13.41	39.50
2008-09	28.48	10.97	30.13	15.48	45.61
2009-10	32.90	12.67	34.80	17.89	52.69
2010-11	38.00	14.64	40.20	20.67	60.87
2011-12	43.89	16.91	46.43	23.87	70.17
2012-13	50.70	19.53	53.64	27.57	81.21
2013-14	58.56	22.56	61.95	31.85	93.80
2014-15	67.63	26.06	71.55	36.79	108.34
2015-16	78.11	30.10	82.64	42.50	125.14
2016-17	90.22	34.77	95.45	49.09	144.54
2017-18	104.20	40.15	110.24	56.69	166.93
2018-19	120.36	46.38	127.34	65.48	192.82
2019-20	139.01	53.57	147.07	75.64	222.71
2020-21	160.55	61.87	169.86	87.36	257.23
2021-22	185.45	71.47	196.20	100.91	297.11

- c) **Cost Benefit Analysis:**  
The following table gives the cost benefit analysis of the Perspective Plan, which has been proposed. The investments for the tourism development are as per the Phase Development and the Block Estimate (Chapters 12 & 13).

Table 15: Cost Benefit Analysis of the Perspective Plan for Nagaland Tourism

<b>Year</b>	<b>Direct Benefits</b>	<b>Indirect Benefits</b>	<b>Total</b>	<b>Cost Investment</b>	<b>Net Incremental Benefits</b>
<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>
2002-03	16.62	19.21	35.83	30.00	5.83
2003-04	19.20	22.20	41.40	30.00	11.40
2004-05	22.16	25.61	47.77	32.00	15.77
2005-06	25.60	29.60	55.20	32.00	23.20
2006-07	29.57	34.18	63.75	28.50	35.25
2007-08	34.16	39.50	73.66	28.50	45.16
2008-09	39.45	45.61	85.06	18.50	66.56
2009-10	45.57	52.69	98.26	18.50	79.76
2010-11	52.64	60.87	113.51	18.00	95.51
2011-12	60.80	70.17	130.97	18.00	112.97
2012-13	70.23	81.21	151.44	10.50	140.94
2013-14	81.12	93.80	174.92	10.50	164.42
2014-15	93.69	108.34	202.03	8.00	194.03
2015-16	108.21	125.14	233.35	8.00	225.35
2016-17	124.99	144.54	269.53	8.00	261.53
2017-18	144.35	166.93	311.28	8.00	303.28
2018-19	166.74	192.82	359.56	8.75	350.81
2019-20	192.58	222.71	415.29	8.75	406.54
2020-21	222.42	257.23	479.65	8.75	470.90
2021-22	256.92	297.11	554.03	8.75	545.28

- d) **Employment Generation:**

Tourism is a labour intensive industry. The publication of ESCAP on the Economic Impact of Tourism in India (as referred in the Report of the Working Group on Tourism for the Ninth Plan) indicated that 1.2 International visits provide employment to one person, while 17 domestic tourists generate on employment. By using these values the projection of direct employment has been shown in the following table. Since the presence of foreign tourist is not likely to be very significant in Nagaland, the combined number is considered for this evaluation as domestic tourists and the ratio is slightly modified 15 tourists for 1 employment.

**Table 16:** Generation of Direct Employment on Implementation of the Perspective Plan for Nagaland:

<b>Year</b>	<b>Additional Tourist Inflow</b>	<b>Direct Employment (15 tourists for 1 employment)</b>
2002-03	12000	800
2003-04	13200	880
2004-05	14520	968
2005-06	15972	1064
2006-07	17569	1171
2007-08	19326	1288
2008-09	21258	1417
2009-10	23384	1556
2010-11	25723	1714
2011-12	28295	1886
2012-13	31124	2074
2013-14	34237	2282
2014-15	37661	2510
2015-16	41427	2761
2016-17	45569	3037
2017-18	50125	3341
2018-19	55138	3675
2019-20	60652	4043
2020-21	66717	4447
2021-22	73389	4892

## CHAPTER – 10

### COMMUNITY & WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION

Naga community is heavily dependent on agricultural economy, particularly jhoom cultivation. This labour intensive agriculture provides enough just for subsistence. On the other hand, this practice has destroyed the natural wealth of the state. The agriculture in Nagaland is very much seasonal and people remain occupied in the laborious process for a long time without any returns. The rugged terrain does not allow much scope for any other type of industrial or development activity. In this sense, tourism that is a labour intensive, non-polluting, fast growing and income generating industry is an excellent option for Nagaland.

The success of Tourism Development in the state like Nagaland particularly, will hinge on the local participation. Nagaland already has a strong tradition of Village Councils and Community participatory initiatives. The women and youth in Nagaland are also very active and full of enthusiasm. This potential can be tapped for multiple purposes. It will achieve employment generation in the otherwise deprived section of the society, will allow the government activity of tourism development to grow like efficient business and at the same time will bring in the feeling of ownership amongst the local people.

#### **Community Participation:**

The tourism development is a complex activity and the Tourism Department cannot carry it out successfully on its own. It requires collaboration with various departments, agencies and private individuals. Tourism Development has two major components, creation of infrastructure and management. Though the first part of creation of infrastructure is looked after by the Tourism Department quite satisfactorily, the second part of management becomes difficult and uneconomical. The effort to involve people at such fragile stage does not succeed since people can foresee losses. They also do not feel as a part of the whole effort. The strategy, therefore, should be to attempt community involvement right at an inception stage of a project.

It is obvious that such an effort may not be feasible and appropriate for all projects. Some important sectors where such projects could be tried are Handicraft Centres, Cultural Centres, Restaurants, Service Centres (phone, internet etc.), Tourist Information Centres, Rural Tourism / Resorts, Tourist guides for Adventure Tourism, village houses as pensions near important tourist destinations etc.

Nagaland Tourism should initiate the strategy through different methods. The most efficient and simple method will be to invite and involve genuine and reputed Voluntary Organisations. This involvement should be right from the planning stage of the project. The proposal should be worked out in the most

transparent manner so that the participants feel comfortable. The scope of participation and the terms of reference should be drafted jointly and carefully. An undertaking / bond should be obtained from them as their commitment to this joint venture. This should be treated like a partnership business and the community should not only be offered share of profits, but also should be given incentives. This can be a Joint Tourism Management Project (JTMP). The success of the JTMP will depend on the freedom, flexibility given to the participants and also on the healthy competition between the various JTMPs running different projects.

Some smaller projects could be handed over to the individuals also, preferably from a deprived class like physically handicapped, senior citizens, unemployed youth, women etc. These projects will act like employment generation means and will also provide important service to the tourists. The best example for this category is the Telecom Facilities (STD / ISD booth). Even Tourist Information Counters could be run through this system.

An attempt could also be made to offer some larger projects on a BOT basis to the organisations. These could be offered to Village Councils, Institutions etc. through invitation.

The participatory activity in the tourism sector could relieve a lot of burden from the Tourism Department and it can use its time, experience and resources in creation of new destinations, publicity and innovative projects.

Nagaland Tourism can initiate this activity of JTMP immediately with excellent incentives offered to the participants including financial assistance through the banks and financial institutions. This activity is a self-sustaining since it does not require major investments / establishments from the government.

### **Women's Participation:**

The community participation through JTMP should be also complemented with another concerted effort to ensure the participation of Women in the Tourism Development and Management. It is commendable that women in Nagaland are industrious, full of enthusiasm and already in the forefront in many sectors. However, special opportunities must be created for their active involvement in the tourism sector. This is not necessarily to help them but also to help the tourism sector since it is in a need to have human resource with an aptitude of service and hospitality. The women should be encouraged, with due incentives to take major responsibilities to run some of the activities of the tourism department. Even here, they should be treated like equal business partners. The scope and terms of reference have to be worked out jointly and carefully.

Additionally, a special effort must be made to ensure the employment of women staff in the Tourism Projects. The Department of Tourism, Nagaland needs to improve the gender ratio amongst the staff. The details of the present situation are not available.

This shows a negative picture in the Tourism Department. A special attempt has to be made not only to improve this ratio up to 50 %, but also to attract individual women entrepreneurs to run various Restaurants, Handicraft Centres etc. An attempt must be made to invite proposals from individuals and organisations and liberal financial assistance could be offered through the banks and financial institutions.

A specially designed 'Women's Tourism Project' (WTP) should be initiated by Nagaland Tourism with immediate effect. In fact, Naga women should be invited to prepare this innovative WTP.

Fig. 12 – Naga Woman:



### **Employment Generation:**

The participatory projects, both JTMP and WTP have potential to create enthusiasm amongst a large sector of Naga society. This would reduce the burden of the tourism department substantially and in turn will create tremendous enhancement in the tourism business. This itself will have a multiplier effect to generate employment possibilities through various allied and dependent sectors.

The Nagaland Tourism needs to emphasise this very positive aspect of the tourism industry to the state government to have sympathetic and liberal budget allocations in the Five Year Plans. It has to be strongly emphasised that Tourism Industry can change the face of Socio-economic condition of Nagaland in a decade with proper planning and initiative.

## CHAPTER – 11

### PROPOSED STRATEGY & ACTION PLAN

The Proposed Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development of Nagaland as detailed in the Chapter – 6 will be implemented according to a well designed Strategy and Action Plan. The general guidelines are discussed hereunder:

#### PROPOSED STRATEGY:

1. Formation of the Tourism Council at the State Government level to oversee the implementation and progress of the Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development. This should include a senior representative of Village Councils. This may also include a senior representative of the Department of Tourism, GOI
2. Formation of the Steering Committee at the Secretariat level to work out the detailed project development plan and delegate its implementation. This should include representatives of Village Councils and Women
3. Formation of the Co-ordinating Committee at the Tourism Department level to obtain all the approvals from the central and state government and work out detailed implementation plan and supervise the project work
4. Appointment of Professional Consultants to prepare the Master Plans and the Detailed Feasibility Reports (DFR) for specific projects
5. Appointment of Professional Consultants to work out detailed Project Plans and Estimates for various projects according to the DFR
6. Appointment of Agencies to implement the Projects according to the detailed project plans, guidelines and specifications
7. Regular supervision, monitoring, reporting and documentation of the progress of various projects
8. Quarterly assessment of the Projects
9. Completion reports of the Projects
10. Appointment of Agencies to manage the completed Tourism Projects
11. Implementation of the Phased Development according to the Perspective Plan
12. Regular supervision, monitoring, reporting and documentation and assessment of the management progress of various Tourism Projects
13. Annual Fiscal Assessment of the Project Work

14. Annual Fiscal and Technical Audit of the Project Work through Professional Consultants
15. Annual Overall Assessment

**PROPOSED ACTION PLAN:**

1. Technical approval of the Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development by the Central and State Governments
2. Organisation of a Seminar (3 / 5 days, in Nagaland) for the detailed presentation of the Perspective Plan followed with discussion, brainstorming and strategic action to launch the Tourism Development Project. The participants will include all those involved in the planning and implementation process and also the stakeholders i.e. tourism related entrepreneurs, voluntary organisations and local people. This will be organised by the Nagaland Tourism within 3 months of the approval.
3. Formation of all the advisory, controlling, supervising, co-ordinating and implementing committees should take place within 3 months of the approval and the committee members will be the participants of the abovementioned seminar. These committees would have met at least once before the seminar.
4. The committees will finalise the prioritisation of the projects for the first five years and initiate the further action for the implementation of those projects. This decision should be taken within 6 months of the approval.
5. The appointments of Professional Consultants for the individual projects, which have been prioritised by the committees. This process should be completed within 6 months of the approval so that the Consultants commence the work of preparation of the Master Plan and the DFR in the 7<sup>th</sup> month
6. The Consultants complete and submit the Master Plan and the DFR of the respective Tourism Projects within 12 months of the approval. These reports will be prepared with close intermittent interaction with the Tourism Department.
7. The Committees will approve the Master Plan and the DFR of various projects and initiate further action to make financial provision for the implementation and also to appoint the Consultants to prepare the detailed Project Plans and Estimates. This action will be taken within 15 months of the approval.
8. In the meanwhile, the committees will form Working Groups within the Tourism Department to co-ordinate and implement action on the specific heads e.g. Finance, Programmes, Publicity, New projects, Up-gradation and Maintenance, Liaison, Administration etc. These Working Groups will be delegated with certain authority and responsibility for the implementation of the approved work.

9. The Working Groups will be also given the responsibility of certain projects within the Perspective Plan, which could be implemented in-house by the Tourism Department. The implementation action on such projects will commence within 6 months of the approval.
10. The Consultants will complete and submit the detailed Project Plans and Estimates within 18 months of the approval. The Committees will assess and initiate these projects for implementation within 24 months of the approval.
11. The Agencies will be appointed for the implementation of the projects. The Project works will commence immediately and shall be completed within 36 months of the approval.
12. The Committees will continue regular monitoring and assessment in consultation with the Professional Consultants. The Project Works will be phased out so that they are manageable for the annual progress and also are within the budgetary provision.
13. The routine work and activities of the Tourism Department will continue through the Working Groups of the Tourism Department. This work will also be regularly monitored and assessed by the Committees and Consultants.
14. The Committees will carry out annual Fiscal and Technical audit of the Project Work in progress. Necessary modifications and corrective actions will be taken based on these reports. The prevailing circumstances from time to time may also compel certain modifications in the strategy and action plan.
15. The further progress of the Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development will continue with the similar strategy according to the phase wise development plan as detailed in the Chapter – 12.

## CHAPTER – 12

### PROPOSED PHASED DEVELOPMENT

The Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development of the State of Nagaland is envisioned for the next 20 years. Such a large and broad visionary plan requires to be phased out in a systematic manner for its realistic detailed planning and implementation. The biennial phased development is proposed starting from the approval of the Perspective Plan. General guidelines for such a Phased Development is discussed hereunder:

1. Year 1 & 2: Preliminary administrative planning for the implementation of the Perspective Plan and commencement of the implementation process, Documentation of Cultural Heritage, Up-gradation of the existing infrastructure, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Preparation of the Master Plan and DFR for five prioritised projects, Preparation of the detailed Project Plans and Estimates for the five prioritised projects, Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs, Rural Tourism – I, Urban Tourism – I, Staff Training  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 10.00, Publicity – 3.00, Human Resource – 3.00, Tourism Infrastructure – 4.00, Product Development – 30.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus  
**Total – Rs. 60.00 Crores**
2. Year 3 & 4: Phokhungri / Lamiye & Chindwin river / Shilloi Lake Project, Tourism Festivals, Up-gradation of the existing infrastructure, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs, Staff Training, New Tourist Lodges  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 10.00, Publicity – 3.00, Human Resource – 1.00, Tourism Infrastructure – 10.00, Product Development – 30.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus **Total – Rs. 64.00 Crores**
3. Year 5 & 6: Eco-tourism / Wildlife / Adventure Tourism Projects, Handicraft / Agriculture Centres, Up-gradation of the existing infrastructure, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs, Staff Training, New Tourist Lodges  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 10.00, Publicity – 1.00, Human Resource – 1.00, Tourism Infrastructure – 5.00, Product Development – 30.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus  
**Total – Rs. 57.00 Crores**

4. Year 7 & 8: Mt. Saramati Biosphere Reserve Project, Defence Tourism, Landscape Design, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs, Staff Training, New Tourist Lodges  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 5.00, Publicity – 1.00, Tourism Infrastructure – 1.00, Product Development – 20.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus **Total – Rs. 37.00 Crores**
5. Year 9 & 10: Cultural Tourism at International / Interstate Junctions, , Landscape Design, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs, Staff Training, New Tourist Lodges  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 5.00, Publicity – 0.50, Tourism Infrastructure – 0.50, Product Development – 20.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus **Total – Rs. 36.00 Crores**
6. Year 11 & 12: Water Tourism, Regional Nature Parks, Privatisation Process, Landscape Design, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs, Staff Training  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 5.00, Publicity – 0.50, Tourism Infrastructure – 0.50, Product Development – 5.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus **Total – Rs. 21.00 Crores**
7. Year 13 & 14: Heritage Tourism, Tourism Circuit – Heritage, Privatisation Process, Landscape Design, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 2.00, Publicity – 0.50, Tourism Infrastructure – 0.50, Product Development – 3.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus **Total – Rs. 16.00 Crores**
8. Year 15 & 16: Tourism Circuit – Wildlife, Privatisation Process, Landscape Design, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 2.00, Publicity – 0.50, Tourism Infrastructure – 0.50, Product Development – 3.00, Misc. – 10.00 thus **Total – Rs. 16.00 Crores**
9. Year 17 & 18: Tourism Circuit – River tourism, Privatisation Process, Landscape Design, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 1.00, Tourism Infrastructure – 0.50, Product Development – 3.00, Misc. – 13.00 thus **Total – Rs. 17.50 Crores**

10. Year 19 & 20: Tourism Circuit – International Border / Interstate, Privatisation Process, Landscape Design, Publicity, Signage and Graphic Design etc., Computerisation, Booking Agents, Information Centres, Tourism Clubs, Staff Training  
**Approx. Investment:** Basic Infrastructure – 1.00, Tourism Infrastructure –0.50, Product Development – 3.00, Misc. – 13.00 thus **Total – Rs. 17.50 Crores**

NOTE: The planning process will continue throughout since the projects will be further phased out according to the budget availability. Up-gradation process will continue for the first five years. The other activity-based projects will continue throughout.

## CHAPTER – 13

### BLOCK ESTIMATE & FEASIBILITY

The Block Estimate is worked out to give overall idea of the financial involvement of this Perspective Plan. However, it is just indicative and could vary based on the circumstances, fluctuations, inflation and further amendments as per the details of the Project. The estimate does not include recurring costs.

Table 17: Block Estimate

S.No.	Item	Approx. Qty.	Rate	Amount (In Lakhs)
<b>I</b>	<b>BASIC INFRASTRUCTURE</b>			
1	Up-gradation of Infrastructure: Average built up area per T. Lodge – 800 Sq. M. X 30 Nos.	24000 Sq.m.	2500	600
2	Up-gradation, Construction of roads (2 lane) up to the tourists destinations / infrastructure	100.00 Kms	4000000	4000
3	Up-gradation / maintenance of Vehicles – 5 Jeeps & 2 buses	10 years	1000000	100
4	New vehicles – Jeeps, Mini buses & maintenance	10 Nos	1000000	100
5	Landscape & Environment Design	50 Sites	600000	300
				<b>5100</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>PUBLICITY / MARKETING</b>			
6	Signage & Hoardings	300 Nos	50000	150
7	Publicity, Literature etc.	20 years	1000000	200
8	Computerisation & Information Technology	20 years	2000000	400
9	Information Counters	30 Nos	500000	150
10	Programmes, Activities	20 years	500000	100
				<b>1000</b>
<b>III</b>	<b>HUMAN RESOURCE / RESEARCH</b>			
11	Documentation & Research of Cultural Heritage	3 years	Lump sum	100
12	Capacity Building, Staff Training	20 years	2000000	400
				<b>500</b>
<b>IV</b>	<b>TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE</b>			
13	Cultural Centres in Metro cities	5 Nos	10000000	500
14	New Wayside Toilets / Amenities	30 Nos	1000000	300
15	New Tourist Lodges	15 Nos	10000000	1500
				<b>2300</b>

<b>V</b>	<b>PRODUCT DEVELOPMENT</b>			
16	Urban Tourism – Kohima, Dimapur	2 Cities	100000000	2000
17	International Coll. Projects	2 Nos	100000000	2000
18	Tourism Festivals – 2 Nos	20 years	1000000	200
19	New Large Projects	20 Nos	50000000	10000
20	Tourism Circuits	5 Nos	10000000	500
				<b>14700</b>
<b>21</b>	<b>Total</b>			<b>23600</b>
22	Unforeseen		10 %	2360
23	Contingencies		5 %	1180
24	Inflation		10 %	2360
25	Administrative Expenses		10 %	2360
26	Consultancy Fees		10 %	2360
<b>27</b>	<b>GRAND TOTAL</b>			<b>34220</b>
	<b>SAY APPROX.</b>			<b>35000</b>

## **THE BLOCK ESTIMATE: RS. THREE HUNDRED FIFTY CRORES ONLY**

### **FEASIBILITY OF THE PROJECT:**

The Block Estimate shows the total Perspective Plan Outlay for 20 years is approximately around Rs. 350 Crores only.

After looking at the item heads and also the strategic approach following points need specific mention:

1. The items 1 to 5 covering the Basic Infrastructure amount to Rs.51.00 Crores, which is approx. 14.57 % of the total cost
2. The items 6 to 10 covering the Publicity and Marketing amount to Rs. 10.00 Crores, which is approx. 2.86 % of the total cost
3. The items 11 & 12 covering Human Resource Development & Research amount to Rs. 5 Crores, which is approx. 1.43 % of the total cost
4. The items 13 to 15 covering Tourism Infrastructure, some of which is in the pipeline and awaiting approval amount to Rs. 23 Crores, which is approx. 6.57 % of the total cost
5. The items 16 to 20 covering new innovative Tourism Product Development amounts to Rs. 147 Crores which is approx. 42 % of the total cost
6. The items 25 & 26 covering Administrative and Consultancy expenses amount to Rs. 47.20 Crores, which is approx. 13.5 % of the total cost

The major item in this Plan is the new innovative Product Development projects, which takes about 42 % of the total outlay. Considering the strategy already mentioned in the earlier chapters for these projects, it is clear that these projects will be collaborative projects, likely to be sponsored by various other departments and funding agencies. The Mizoram Tourism will have to invest its time and preliminary expenses for the preparation of the detailed proposals, which will be about 20 % of the cost of these projects i.e. 8.40 % of the total cost. This could be manageable within the resources provided by the state and also assistance provided by the central government.

The Publicity & Marketing activities take about 2.86 % of the total cost which is also manageable within the resources of the state government complemented with other sponsorships.

The costs of Basic Infrastructure including up-gradation of existing infrastructure, creating new service infrastructure and new projects (already in the pipeline and awaiting approval), which is about 14.57 % of the total cost amounting to approx. Rs. 51.00 Crores over the period of 20 years could be within the budgetary provision of the Ministry of Tourism, GOI. Under the present allocation, the special provision for the 8 states of Northeast region is Rs. 14.80 Crores i.e approx. Rs. 1.85 Crores per state.

Thus the proposal of the Perspective Plan as worked out looks economically feasible. It is also envisaged that there will be average 10 % annual increase in the tourist traffic due to these overall efforts. It may boost further more after 5 / 10 years. The overall increase by 100 % in the next 10 years will itself make the Nagaland Tourism a profit-making department. At present level also, they have almost managed to cover the recurring costs.

**We feel that the Perspective Plan will not only be economically feasible but also will make the Tourism Development in Nagaland very sustainable.**

## CHAPTER – 14

### CONCLUSION

Nagaland Tourism has over a short span tried to create substantial tourism infrastructure in this remote and rugged region in spite of a lot of difficulties. However, the most of the work has remained incomplete and non-functional.

Additionally, these efforts were wasted since the Department has remained totally dependent on the central assistance for the creation of this infrastructure. The state assistance is just bear minimum enough to cover the recurring costs marginally. The approach for the tourism development has also remained monotonous.

Nagaland is fortunate to have natural beauty as a major asset for the tourism. However the sites selection for the Tourist Facilities appears to be haphazard and has not been preceded with potential study. This casual approach will not attract large tourism and make the development sustainable.

Fig. 13 – Naga Symbolism:



The proposed Perspective Plan for the Tourism Development in Nagaland takes into consideration all these facts and recommends new and innovative complementary concepts without too much of financial liabilities. Nagaland Tourism will get a tremendous boost due to these innovative large projects, which have varied character and could attract tourist from varied interests. It is also possible to attract tourists to Nagaland at multiple times because of these diverse activities and attractions.

Wonderful nature, rugged hills, traditional music and smiling faces of Naga people will be there all the times as an interesting backdrop for the new proposals. This will make Nagaland Tourism unique.

Nagaland state, like the others in the Northeast Region, has to deal with various difficulties, infrastructure hurdles and socio-political problems. These are beyond the control of one single state. It will take sometime to resolve these issues, when tourism in the region will start growing. The Perspective Plan envisages this and attempts to make the Tourism Department act like a catalyst to augment the tourism potential of the state. Over the years, tourism will be a community activity in Nagaland with the Nagaland Tourism taking a role of the initiator and facilitator.

We are hopeful that Nagaland Tourism will reveal the mystery of Naga mysticism to the tourists in the near future.

## APPENDICES

## APPENDIX – a

### GUIDELINES TO BE FOLLOWED BY STATE GOVTS / UTS FOR PREPARATION OF 20 YEARS PERSPECTIVE PLANS

- i) A perspective plan with a time frame of 20 years needs to be developed for developing sustainable tourism giving year-wise phasing of investment having regard to the resources available. Department of Tourism shall provide Central financial assistance for this purpose subject to the maximum of Rs.20.00 lakhs.
- ii) The Plan should indicate short-term and long-term plans, targets and ground realities.
- iii) The Plan should indicate all activities to be undertaken by different agencies clearly indicating the time frame for each activity.
- iv) The Plan should be able to assess the existing tourism scenario in the State/Union Territory with respect to existing traffic levels and inventory of:
  - \* Natural resources;
  - \* Heritage and other socio-cultural assets;
  - \* Quantitative/demographic factors like population, employment, occupation, income levels etc.
  - \* Services and infrastructure already available.
- v) The Plan should review the status of existing development/investment plans of schemes for the development of tourism in the region.
- vi) The Plan should list and evaluate existing potential tourist destinations and centres and categorise them on the basis of inventory of attractions, infrastructure availability, degree of popularity, volume of traffic flow etc.
- vii) The Plan should analyse and categorise existing/potential destinations and centres, as a stand-alone destination, part of a circuit and/or as major attractions for special interests groups, etc.
- viii) The Plan should assess the existing infrastructure levels at identified destinations/centre in terms of quality of roads/transportation facilities, civic amenities, enroute transit facilities, boarding and lodging facilities etc.
- ix) The Plan should be able to broadly assess traffic flow to identified destinations & centres for assessment of infrastructure requirements taking into account past growth trends, suggested linkages and integration, future expected developments including likely investments by the State and investment climate/incentive for the private sector, etc.

- x) The Plan should attempt and arrive at an indicative cost configuration of likely investment on infrastructure development under different heads and to prioritise investment needs by drawing up a phased investment plan covering the next 20 years.
- xi) The Plan should identify the existing as well as new tourism projects including projects for expansion/augmentation, up gradation of facilities and services destinations & centres, which have potential for development.
- xii) The Plan should undertake product conceptualisation cum feasibility exercise inter-alia for identified projects covering aspects like locational evaluation, schematic product planning & conceptualisation including quantification of individual project parameters, assessment of overall investment levels and of project viability cum feasibility study exercises etc.
- xiii) The Plan should prepare an action plan for implementation of identified potential development schemes/projects/products and for development of infrastructure in conformity with the policy objectives & guidelines provided by the concerned state/central agencies/departments and the requirements of national development and funding agencies. The overall development plan to also take into accounts WTO's Bali declaration on tourism development.
- xiv) The Plan should include Project-wise potential for employment generation; a reasonable percentage of potential employment is to be reserved for women.
- xv) The Plan should indicate the actual and the projected number of domestic and foreign tourist arrivals for each proposed tourist place.
- xvi) Prioritise the scheme on the basis of employment potential of the project and the tourist arrivals at the proposed place.
- xvii) An inventory of existing infrastructure facilities (including paying guest facility) is to be made; after which, the proposed infrastructure needs to be split up into various segments concerning different State Government Departments, such as PWD, Forest, Culture, Handicrafts etc., and dovetailed with the Tourism Plans.
- xviii) Since the Perspective Plan would be used for external assistance, it would be desirable to suggest State tourism projects to foreign funding agencies for financial assistance; each project has to be properly scrutinised and finalised accordingly.
- xix) Other sources of funding such as loans from the Financial Institutions, the Tourism Finance Corporation of India (TFCI) etc., need to be explored. Besides, proper incentives need to be suggested for private sector participation.

- xx) Further the available institutional machinery in the State to oversee/coordinate the development of tourism infrastructure has to be specifically suggested.
- xxi) Facilities for performance by local artists; cultural troupes should be built into the perspective plan.
- xxii) Cultural complexes can be suggested with the financial help from the State Department of Culture and later made economically viable on pattern of Dilli Haat.
- xxiii) Handicraft shops should be suggested at various tourist places; these could be run by women.
- xxiv) Perspective plan should include potential developing health resorts at/near the tourist places. Yoga classes, nature cure facilities, ayurvedic system of medicines should be available at these places to attract tourists.
- xxv) Consultant preparing the perspective plan should be asked to give an executive summary of the plan along with the report.
- xxvi) The perspective plans should incorporate attractive packages/schemes to attract private sector investment.
- xxvii) It is necessary that the environmental issues are dealt with in sufficient details and environmental impact assessment studies made in respect of all new projects.
- xxviii) The perspective plans should include carrying capacity studies, instruments of spatial and land use planning, instruments of architectural controls for restoration of old properties and construction of new ones in old towns and cities, strategy for local community participation and protection of cultural identity, awareness programmes for local participation and local commitment to the project.
- xxix) Measures necessary for mitigating the adverse environmental impacts and rehabilitating the tourist places already environmentally damaged should be incorporated in the perspective plans.
- xxx) The perspective plan should include strategy for privatisation of the tourism related properties owned by the State and the State Tourism Corporation.

## APPENDIX – b

### QUESTIONNAIRE

NAME:

\_\_\_\_\_

DESIGNATION:

\_\_\_\_\_

OFFICE ADDRESS:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

PHONE NO. \_\_\_\_\_ E-MAIL ADD: \_\_\_\_\_

#### **A Potential identification:**

1. Name 5 Places of Tourist Interest in your State

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Name 5 Places of Tourist Interest in your neighbouring States?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3. How many places of the above have you visited?

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. Categorise the above places under following heads:

Archaeological \_\_\_\_\_

Pilgrimage \_\_\_\_\_

Nature \_\_\_\_\_

Adventure \_\_\_\_\_

Leisure \_\_\_\_\_

Health \_\_\_\_\_

#### **B Information & publicity:**

5. How did you come to know of these places?

Newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ Television \_\_\_\_\_ Internet \_\_\_\_\_

Travel Agent \_\_\_\_\_ Relatives \_\_\_\_\_ Tourism Office \_\_\_\_\_

6. Where did you get detailed information regarding the above places?

Travel Agent \_\_\_\_\_ Relatives \_\_\_\_\_ Tourism Office \_\_\_\_\_

7. Do you think the information available was enough? If not, what was lacking?

\_\_\_\_\_

8. Which festival/cultural programme is arranged by Dept. of Tourism?  
\_\_\_\_\_

9. Did you go on a tour through Travel Agent? If yes, give the name  
\_\_\_\_\_

10. Were the services offered by the Travel Agent satisfactory?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**C Accessibility:**

11. How will you rate these tourist places on the basis of their road / railway /  
airways linkages?  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Average \_\_\_\_\_ Bad \_\_\_\_\_

12. Rate the quality of vehicles / mode of transport available:  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Average \_\_\_\_\_ Bad \_\_\_\_\_

13. Did you experience any hazard disrupting your travel? If yes, which?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

14. Did you have to complete any entry formalities? If yes, how many days did it  
require for processing?  
\_\_\_\_\_

15. Did you travel by any vehicle of the Dept. of Tourism?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**D Services:**

16. Which of the following facilities was available en-route to your tourist  
destination?  
Toilet \_\_\_\_\_ Food \_\_\_\_\_ Phone \_\_\_\_\_ Medicines \_\_\_\_\_

17. How do you rate the quality?  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Average \_\_\_\_\_ Poor \_\_\_\_\_

18. At which place did you utilise transit accommodation during your travel?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

19. Did you find any difficulties for Senior Citizens or Physically Handicapped  
persons during travel? If yes, elaborate.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

20. Were tourist guide services and on site tourist information available?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**E Hospitality:**

21. Where did you stay during your travel / tour?  
Pvt. hotels \_\_\_\_\_ Dept. of Tourism hotels \_\_\_\_\_ Relatives & friends \_\_\_\_\_
22. How was the quality of facilities available?  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Average\_\_ Poor \_\_\_\_\_
23. How was the service?  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Average\_\_ Poor \_\_\_\_\_
24. Where did you prefer to eat during your stay?  
At lodging facility \_\_\_\_\_ outside eateries/restaurants \_\_\_\_\_
25. What type of food did you prefer?  
Local food \_\_\_\_\_ traditional food \_\_\_\_\_
26. How was the quality of food?  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Satisfactory \_\_\_\_\_ Poor \_\_\_\_\_
27. Was generator facility available in case of electricity/power failure?  
\_\_\_\_\_
28. Did you participate in any food festival? If yes, elaborate.  
\_\_\_\_\_
29. Were first aid/medical facilities available at the facilities?  
Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_ Not aware \_\_\_\_\_
30. Were recreation facilities available for children?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**F Security:**

31. Did you feel insecure during your travel or destination?  
\_\_\_\_\_
32. Did you have to go through security checks? If yes, where?  
\_\_\_\_\_
33. Have you experienced any theft or robbery?  
\_\_\_\_\_
34. How do you find nature of security at the tourist place?  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Average \_\_\_\_\_ Poor \_\_\_\_\_
35. Did you see any police station or police outpost in the vicinity of tourist destination?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**G Recreation:**

36. Did you participate in any festival organised by the Tourism Dept. or local people?  
\_\_\_\_\_

37. What was the quality of the festival?  
Good \_\_\_\_\_ Average \_\_\_\_\_ Poor \_\_\_\_\_

**H Souvenir & Gifts:**

38. Did you carry any souvenirs with you? What type?  
\_\_\_\_\_

39. Did you visit any State Emporium to see or buy traditional crafts?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**I Sustainability:**

40. Will you visit the state again?  
\_\_\_\_\_

41. Will you recommend the visited tourist destinations to the others?  
\_\_\_\_\_

42. Rate your tour expenses as:  
Inexpensive \_\_\_\_\_ moderate \_\_\_\_\_ very expensive \_\_\_\_\_

43. Did you experience any difficulties for children, women, senior citizens, and handicapped persons? If yes, elaborate:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**J Environment:**

44. Did you visit any National Park or Sanctuary?  
\_\_\_\_\_

45. Did you experience use of solar energy or any alternate energy sources in your travel/tour?  
\_\_\_\_\_

46. How was the garbage / sewage disposal systems at various tourist destinations?

Poor----- Average-----Good-----

**K Finance:**

47. Did you carry Credit Card, Travellers Cheques, cash for expenditure?  
\_\_\_\_\_
48. Were ATM easily available? Did you avail of this service?  
\_\_\_\_\_
49. Did you travel on LTC facility?  
\_\_\_\_\_
50. Did you acquire a holiday loan for travel? If yes, which bank?  
\_\_\_\_\_
50. Did you closely interact with local people?  
\_\_\_\_\_
51. Did you have any language problem? If yes, which area?  
\_\_\_\_\_
52. What is your preference for tourist destination?  
Archaeological \_\_\_\_\_ Pilgrimage \_\_\_\_\_ Nature \_\_\_\_\_  
Adventure \_\_\_\_\_ Leisure \_\_\_\_\_ Health \_\_\_\_\_
53. What is your approx. annual budget per person for travel?  
Upto Rs. 10,000/------ upto Rs. 50,000/------ above Rs. 50,000/------

## APPENDIX – c

### FORMAT FOR INTERVIEWS

The questions will be pertaining to following topics:

	EXISTING	PROPOSED
1	Potential identification	
2	Information & publicity	
3	Accessibility	
4	Services	
5	Hospitality	
6	Security	
7	Recreation	
8	Souvenir & Gift generation	
9	Sustainability	
10	Employment generation	
11	Environment friendly measures or Ecotourism practices	
12.	Human resources and public relations	

#### Potential identification

1. What are the criteria for identifying places etc as tourist destinations?
2. Are these destinations classified under various categories? If yes, which?
3. Are these destinations classified in conjunction with the Property owners, e.g. Forest Department, ASI, etc.?
4. Are privately owned properties identified as tourist destinations?
5. Are the various tourist destinations scrutinized to de-list/upgrade their listing?
6. How many tourist destinations are added every year?
7. Are any projects undertaken to develop them as tourist destinations?

#### Information & publicity

1. What kind of information is given regarding the tourist destinations?
2. Which information media is preferred?
3. Are different types of media used for various tourist destinations? If yes, how are they categorized?
4. Is there a separate cell for tourism information? If yes,
  - i) What is the structure of the group?
  - ii) Is the job privatized and given on consultancy basis?
  - iii) How is the efficiency / out put of the group quantified?
  - iv) Are the cells operative in major Indian cities?

5. Any special steps taken to utilize the information technology?
6. At what intervals/frequency is the information updated?
7. Any measures taken to receive feed back from tourist / clients with regards to information given?
8. Any regular events / festivals undertaken by the departments for publicity?
9. Any personalities associated with the publicity campaign?
10. Any regular international fairs / festivals participated in, for publicity?
11. Any promotional awards/ incentives associated with tourism publicity?
12. Any negative features perceived in existing tourism information and publicity?
13. Are there any statistics / data available as regards to the number, composition, age group and various other details of tourist already visited the destinations?
14. Are there any studies undertaken or projections made as regard to future expected tourist?
15. Are there any studies undertaken or data available as regard to potential international tourist or elitist tourist?
16. Which allied government departments or other private sectors promote state tourism?
17. Are there any collaborations with banks / financial institutions to provide for holiday loans to promote state tourism?
18. Are there any identified / short listed tour and travel agents to promote state tourism?
19. Is the Youth Hostel Associations functional and active in the state?
20. Are school, colleges and universities involved in state tourism and its promotions?
21. What is the number of the international visitors to the state? Is their any data available regarding their purpose of visit?
22. Do Foreign Nationals visit for the purpose of trade / medical facilities / pilgrimage / immigration / family ties?

## **Accessibility**

1. Are all the tourist destinations accessible by good transport links?
2. Are all tourist destinations linked with minimum 2 transportation links?
3. How many destinations are, air linked?
4. Are any of the links disrupted / closed due to natural reasons such as rain, floods etc?
5. To how many destinations is the railway linked?
6. What percentage of roads connected to various tourist destinations can be classified as good roads?
7. Any major cases of road, rail, air, mishaps in the last 5 years, carrying tourist?
8. Any major cases of robbery, dacoity in the last 5 years, with regards to tourist?
9. Do visiting tourists have to complete any entry formalities? Are these relaxed in any special cases?
10. How many days does it require for processing tourist visas?
11. Are nationals from any country, restricted from entering the state?
12. Does the department of tourism own any vehicles, purely for tourism transportation?

## **Services**

1. What kinds of public utility services are available en-route to various tourist destinations?
2. What is the maximum distance traveled to reach any tourist destinations?
3. Do all PCO's have STD, ISD, FAX and Internet facility?
4. What is the maximum capacity of public toilets provided?
5. Are these toilets self sustainable or funded by the Government?
6. Do eating facilities serve both vegetarian and non-vegetarian food items?
7. Are there fast food counters en-route to major tourist destinations?
8. The Major amenities are provided and maintained by which department?
9. Do the airports have overnight staying facilities?
10. Do major airports and railway stations have booking facilities for stay and further travel?
11. Are there any privately owned (owned by trustees, NGO's etc.) public amenities?
12. How many privately owned and Government recognized eateries are in function along the tourist roads?
13. Is there Government Control over the quality of food served by the private eateries?
14. How many first air centers, health clinics by government are available, enroute to major tourist destinations?
15. What is the source of drinking water in government owned eateries, fast food centers, hotels etc.
16. Do they have any control over the quality of bottled water/soft drinks available?
  1. Are the various facilities/amenities planned by the department are barrier free?

## **Hospitality**

1. Is lodging and boarding (L & B) facilities are available at every tourist destinations? If no, for what percentage is available?
2. Are there any star category facilities available?
3. Apart from the Government, which major private organizations provides for these facilities?
4. What is the general occupancy rate in government owned facilities during peak and off-season?
5. What is the general occupancy rate in private owned facilities during peak and off-season?
6. Is paying guest facilities available with local persons, near the tourist destinations?
7. Does every lodging facility have a restaurant?
8. Is both vegetarian and non-vegetarian food served in these hotels?
9. Are the L & B facilities self-sustainable or funded by the Government?
10. What is the minimum staff employed at a L & B facility?
11. Is the water, electricity and other amenities provided by the Government at free / subsidized / general costs?
12. Who takes care of the maintenance of the L & B facilities? And what are the monthly costs?

13. Do all the L & B facilities have first aid and trained personnel to administer first aid with it?
14. Do all the L & B facilities have television sets?
15. What kind of cuisine is available at the L & B facilities?
16. Are any food festivals planned for tourism promotion?
17. Are any tourist destinations planned entirely on the basis of variety of food available?
18. What the criteria for identifying locations for setting up new L & B facilities?

## **Security**

1. Does the state required to provide security to visiting tourist? If yes, are the tourists aware of these facilities before embarking on the tour?
2. Any known data of insurgency against visiting tourist?
3. Any known communal out bursts against visiting pilgrims?
4. Any known cases of robbery, kidnap, murder against visiting tourist?
5. What is the gender wise distribution amongst the tourist?
6. Do groups of senior citizens, women and school children travel independently for tourism?
7. Do General Physicians prescribe any kind of vaccinations/medicines before coming to the state?
8. Do insurance companies provide for any special schemes etc. for state travel?
9. How many types of various security forces are actively present in the state?
10. Do the Indian tourist have any travel restrictions imposed by the Government for security purposes?
11. Do Foreign Nationals have any travel restrictions imposed by the Government for security purposes?
12. Do Foreign Nationals have any special permits, relaxation of rules as regards to consumption alcohol etc.?
13. Any specific reasons for which tourist visas are denied to Foreign Nationals?

## **Recreation**

1. What kind of active recreation is available in the urban areas / rural areas in the state?
2. What kind of passive recreation is available in the urban areas / rural areas in the state?
3. Is any recreational activity sold as a part of package tour?
4. Is any recreational activity promoted as state tourism?
5. Does state tourism sponsor the state sports or sportsperson?
6. Does the state tourism promote any cultural activity?
7. What is the role of Indian Cinema and Theatre in passive recreation?
8. Is a popular Hindi film or local theatre a part of a package tour?
9. Are any recreation facilities provided in the campus of the L & B facilities?
10. Are any tourist destinations planned entirely as relaxation and recreational destinations?
11. Do any recreation activities within the state promote/generate tourism?

## **Souvenir & Gift generation**

1. Does the tourism department have any parting gift / memorabilia for its tourists?
2. Does every L & B have a gift / souvenir shop?
3. Are the state emporiums self-sustainable?
4. Does the state promote any particular activity, art or handicraft through tourism?
5. Does the state have any events, festivals, and fairs for foreign nationals to purchase duty free goods?
6. What percentage of perishable items is purchased by tourist?

## **Sustainability**

1. Do all the facilities provided by the state tourism department are self-sustainable?
2. What percentage of help / subsidy provided by the Central Government for sustainability?
3. What revenue generative activities are undertaken by the department?
4. Which is the most unfeasible aspect of tourism development and management?
5. Which is the lowest revenue generating activity of the tourism department?
6. Which is the highest revenue generating activity of the tourism department?
7. Are any tourism project privatized to make them sustainable?
8. Are there any programs / courses / workshops for the officers and staff to make the projects sustainable and improve efficiency?
9. Are any planning and designing measures adopted while constructing the L & B facilities so as to make them self sustainable?
10. Are there any schemes to involve the staff in the profit or loss of the project?
11. Are there any project on the basis of Build, Operate and Transfer (BOT) basis?
12. Have any private parities, organizations shown interest in resort / L & B management?
13. Is the management of any tourist destinations looked after by other government department or any other agency such as Army etc.?
14. Is the monthly remuneration of the staff linked to their performance?
15. Does the department have any management plans for its various assets?
16. Can you suggest any two majors that can help the existing tourism activities become self-sustainable?

## **Employment generation**

1. What is the number of persons directly employed by the department of tourism?
2. What is the number of persons indirectly employed by the department of tourism?
3. Are any NGO's / voluntary organizations supported by the department of tourism?
4. What is the rate of unemployment in neighboring areas of tourist destinations?
5. Are any village groups / committees directly involved in tourism activities?

6. What is the percentage of women employment, direct and indirect, in the department of tourism?
7. Can you suggest any two tourism related activities that can help in local employment generation?

### **Environment friendly measures or Ecotourism practices**

1. Do the L & B facilities or any other projects of the tourism department utilize alternate sources of energy? If yes, which?
2. Does the department of tourism promote any awareness, research activity in utilization of alternate sources of energy?
3. Do any projects carry out any recycling process?
4. What amount of waste is generated by the various facilities / amenities of the tourism department and how it is taken care of?
5. Does the department have any project planned on the concept, eco-tourism?
6. What kind of subsidies / incentives are offered by the state government for promoting and utilizing alternate sources of energy?
7. Are there any environment friendly regulations followed by the department while developing various amenities?
8. Can you name any two activities, which can be termed as environment friendly or energy saving practices?

### **Human resources and public relations**

1. Do the existing staff members of the tourism department have formal training in travel and tourism?
2. Are there any training programs/workshops for staff from non-tourism background?
3. Is there any budgetary provision for staff training?
4. What are the criteria for selection, promotion and transfer of tourism personnel?
5. Have the tourist in the past had any grievances against services offered by the department staff?
6. Do any tourism staff participate in national and international tourism related fairs, events, seminar, conferences etc.?

## **APPENDIX – d**

### **GENERAL INFORMATION – NAGALAND**

1. **LOCATION:**  
Approximately lies between 25° 6' N and 27° 4' N latitude and between the longitudes 93° 20' E and 95° 15' E
2. **AREA:**  
16, 527 Sq. Km.
3. **POPULATION:**  
19, 88, 636 (According to 2001 census)
4. **SEX RATIO:**  
909 Females per 1000 Males
5. **CAPITAL:** Kohima (Alt. 1, 444.12 M.)
6. **DISTRICTS:**  
Kohima, Mokokchung, Mon, Phek, Turnsang, Wokha, Zunheboto and Dimapur
7. **TRIBES:**  
Angami, Ao, Sema, Lotha, Rengma, Chakhesang, Sangtam, Konyak, Phom, Chang, Yimchunger, Khiamniungan, Zeliang, Kuki and Pochury
8. **DENSITY OF POPULATION:**  
120 persons per Sq. Km.
9. **LITERACY RATE:**  
67.11 %
10. **CLIMATE:**  
Summer (June – September) – Mean Max. : 31° C, Mean Min.: 16°C,  
Winter (October – February) – Mean Max. : 16° C, Mean Min.: 4° C
11. **BEST SEASON:**  
October to May
12. **AVERAGE RAINFALL:**  
2000 mm to 2500 mm
13. **MAIN RIVERS:**  
Dhansiri, Doyang, Dikhu, Milak, Zubgki and Tizu

14. IMPORTANT LAKES:

Omoklushi or Omok Mulu (Mokokchung), Sungkotenem Awatsung (Mokokchung), Toshu-Wozhu (Wokha), Acie (Pfutsero), Shilloi or Lachem (Phek), Dzudu (Phek), Zanibu (Phek)

15. MAJOR MOUNTAINS / PEAKS:

Saramati (3841 M, Tuensang), Japfu (3066 M, Kohima), Ezupu (2890 M, Kohima), Paona (2838 M, Central Zeliangrong), Angola (2097 M, South Zeliangrong), Zephu (2605 M, Phek), Taraharo (2471 M, West Viswema), Terapimithu (2232 M, Phek), Kapu (2889 M, Kohima), Kupamedzu (2620 M, Phek), Zanutou (2750 M, Phek), Veda or Pakkol (2750 M, Mon), Tyui (M, Wokha), Tempfu (3000 M, Kohima), Totsu (1250 M, Wokha)

16. MINERAL RESOURCES:

Coal, Limestone, Iron, Chromium, Nickel, Cobalt, Copper, Glass sand, Slate, Chromite, Magnesite, Asbestos, Talc, Marble, Petroleum

17. HIGHEST PEAK:

Saramati (3, 841 M. above sea level)

18. LANGUAGES:

English, Hindi, Nagamese and local dialects

19. RELIGIONS: Christianity, Hinduism, Islam

## APPENDIX – e

### NAGALAND STATE TOURISM BUDGET – 1993-94 TO 2002-03 (Rs. In Lakhs)

S. No.	Years	Category	Allotment	Expenditure
1	1993-94	Plan	108.00	104.21
		Non-plan	42.00	32.73
		Total	150.00	136.94
2	1994-95	Plan	132.00	31.98
		Non-plan	72.96	70.51
		Total	204.96	102.49
3	1995-96	Plan	132.00	121.45
		Non-plan	50.30	48.10
		Total	182.30	169.55
4	1996-97	Plan	245.00	249.44
		Non-plan	49.28	44.64
		Total	303.28	294.08
5	1997-98	Plan	263.00	79.18
		Non-plan	65.23	56.22
		Total	328.23	118.30
6	1998-99	Plan	263.00	215.34
		Non-plan	62.65	56.22
		Total	325.65	271.56
7	1999-2000	Plan	263.00	203.23
		Non-plan	66.39	57.49
		Total	329.39	260.39
8	2000-2001	Plan	305.00	176.80
		Non-plan	73.34	61.13
		Total	378.34	237.93
9	2001-2002	Plan	308.00	246.07
		Non-plan	82.67	60.88
		Total	390.67	306.95
10	2002-2003	Plan	226.00	169.00
		Non-plan	134.94	134.94
		Total	360.94	303.94

## APPENDIX – f

### THE REVENUE COLLECTED BY NAGALAND TOURISM

#### 1985-86 TO 2000-2001

<b>Year</b>	<b>Revenue (Rs. in Lakhs)</b>
1985-86	531.56
1986-87	608.73
1987-88	645.91
1988-89	557.31
1989-90	473.00
1990-91	508.85
1991-92	541.48
1992-93	351.00
1993-94	306.38
1994-95	220.75
1995-96	275.10
1996-97	152.53
1997-98	123.02
1998-99	291.83
1999-2000	166.28
2000-2001	257.67
2001-2002(up to Dec 2002)	125.91

## APPENDIX – g

### TOURIST ACCOMMODATION DEVELOPED BY NAGALAND TOURISM

S.No.	Location	Rooms	Beds	Remark
1	Tourist Lodge, Kohima			Functioning
2	Yatri Niwas, Kohima			
3	Tourist Lodge, Mokokchung			Functioning
4	Tourist Lodge, Dimapur			Functioning
5	Tourist Lodge, Zunheboto			
6	Tourist Lodge, Mon			
7	Tourist Lodge, Wokha			
8	Rest House, Shiloi Lake, Phek			
9	Rest House, Longwa, Mon			
10	Rest House, Liphayan, Wokha			
11	Rest House, Zhuro Chumpho, Wokha			
12	Rest House, Vankhosong, Wokha			
13	Rest House, Mt. Tiyi, Wokha			
14	Rest House, Mopungchuket, Mokokchung			
15	Rest House, Ungma, Mokokchung			
16	Rest House, Longkhum, Mokokchung			
17	Rest House, Impur, Mokokchung			
18	Rest House, Khonoma, Kohima			
19	Rest House, Poilwa, Peren			
20	Rest House, Seithekima			
21	Rest House, Chumukedima			
22	Rest House, Molungyimsen, Mokokchung			
23	Heritage Rest House, Dimapur			Functioning
24	Rest House, Thanamir, Tuensang			
25	Tourist Resort, Doyang, Wokha			
26	Tourist Resort, Dzukou, Kohima			
27	Tourist Resort, Dzulakie, Kohima			
28	Resort at Kongro Menden, Mokokchung			

**NOTE: Out of total 28 locations, only 4 are functioning.**

## **APPENDIX – h**

### **PRIVATE HOTELS AT KOHIMA**

1. Hotel Japfu – Three Star
2. Ambassador Hotel
3. Capital Hotel
4. Evergreen Hotel
5. Lizuku Hotel
6. Mayose Hotel
7. Oking Hotel
8. Pine Hotel
9. Hotel Regal
10. Royal Hotel
11. Sharon Hotel
12. Valley View Hotel
13. Viva Hotel
14. West Inn Hotel
15. Hotel West View
16. Dimori Cove Resort

## APPENDIX – i

### STATUS OF THE TOURISM FACILITIES IN NAGALAND

Sl. No.	Name of the location	Status	Remarks/Suggestions
a.	<b>Tourist Lodges</b>		
1	Tourist lodge, Kohima (Sanctioned in 1987 and completed in 1990. Upgraded in 1999 and completed, under CSS).	Managed and run by the Department and functioning well.	
2	Yatri Niwas, Kohima (sanctioned in 1987, completed in 1990 under CSS).	Leased out to a private party, on basis of tender system.	
3	Cultural Hall, Kohima (sanctioned in 1987 under CSS, but not completed).	Due to cost escalation, the implementing agency could not complete the work. The building is also under the occupation of the contractor.	PWD has terminated the contract work and DC is to pursue for eviction.
4	Tourist lodge at Mokokchung (sanctioned in 86 and completed in 1989 and again cleared for up-gradation in 2001, under CSS).	Was under CRPF occupation since 1995, which was handed over to the dept. in Dec. 2001 and is to be taken up for repair & renovation.	Could be considered for leasing out, to private parties.
5	Tourist lodge at Dimapur (started in 1985 and upgraded in 200 under CSS).	Functioning well, under management of the department.	
6	Tourist lodge at Zunheboto	Completed but not hand over to the dept. due to payment of pending bills.	Not handed over to the dept.

7	Tourist lodge at Mon (sanctioned in 1995 and completed in 1999, under CSS).	Managed by the dept. but not very satisfactory, due to shortage of staff at the official level.	Could be considered for leasing out, to private parties.
8	Tourist lodge at Wokha (sanctioned in 1983, completed in 86, under State Plan. To be upgraded under CSS as sanctioned in 2000.	Never functioned well from the beginning, due to due maintenance. At the moment it is closed down for renovation/repair works.	Could be considered for leasing out to private parties.
b.	<b>Rest House</b>		
9	Rest House at Shilloi Lake, Phek (sanctioned in 1994, under CSS but not completed).	PWD, the implementing agency had not submitted the completion/utilization certificates (Ministry will not consider any pending projects of the 8 <sup>th</sup> Plan).	Can be considered for completion under state plan, provided private or community management comes forward.
10	Cafeteria at Mhalie Peseyie Lake, m Dimapur (sanctioned in 1995 completed in 99).	Not functioning.	Request for private management received in the dept.
11	Tourist Rest House at Longwa, Mon (sanctioned in 1995, completed in 1998 under CSS).	Functioning.	
12	Tourist Rest House at Liphanyan, Wokha (sanctioned in 1997 , completed in 2001, under CSS).	Not functioning for want of management.	For private leasing or for community management.
13	Tourist Rest House at Zhuro Chumpho, Wokha (sanctioned in 97 and completed in 2001, under CSS).	Not functioning due to want of management.	For private leasing or for community management.

14	Rest House at Vankhosong, Wokha (sanctioned in 1998, completed in 2001, under CSS).	Position as above.	As above.
15	Tourist Rest House at Mt. Tiyi, Wokha (sanctioned in 1996, completed in 1999).	Not functioning.	To be considered for management by VC concerned.
16	Tourist Rest House at Mopungchuket, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 1998, completed in 2001, under CSS).	As above.	To be managed by the Village Tourism Board.
17	Tourist Rest House at Ungma, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 1998, completed in 2001 under CSS)	As above.	To be managed by the Community/VC
18	Tourist Rest House at Longkhum, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 1999 under CSS, to be completed within current year)	As above.	As above.
19	Tourist Rest House at Impur, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 2000 and still under construction, under CSS).	Under completion.	As above.
20	Tourist Rest House at Khonoma, Kohima (sanctioned in 2000, under construction, CSS).	As above.	Will be managed and run by the Village Community.
21	Tourist Rest House at Poilwa, Peren (sanctioned in 1996, completed in 1998).	Not functioning.	To be managed by the VC.
22	Tourist Resort at Seithekima Waterfall (sanctioned in 1996 under CSS, but not completed).	Could not be completed due to internal dispute between villagers and contractor.	For private leasing or for community management.

23	Tourist Resort at Chumukedima waterfall (sanctioned in 1996, completed in 1998, under CSS).	Completed in 2000.	For private leasing or for community management.
24	Tourist House at Molungyimsen, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 2000, completed in 2001, under CSS).	Not functioning.	To be managed by the VC/Community.
25	Tourist Information Centre at Dimapur (sanctioned in 1999, completed in 2000, under CSS).	Not functioning, as furnishing has not been provided.	Will be managed by the dept.
26	Dimapur Heritage Rest House (sanctioned in 1999, completed in 2001, under CSS).	Functioning managed by the dept.	
c.	<b>Wayside Amenities</b>		
27	W/A at Tseminyu, Kohima (sanctioned in 1985, completed in 1987, under CSS). Renovated recently in 2002.	Not functioning for want of management.	To be put up for private or community management.
28	W/A at Changki, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 1985, completed in 1987).	As above.	Can be renovated provided the community or private party can take up management.
29	W/A at Tizit, Mon (sanctioned 1990, completed in 1992, under CSS).	As above.	Can be considered for renovation, provided private/community management comes forward.
30	W/A at Piphema, Kohima (sanctioned 1985, completed in 1987, under CSS).	As above.	As above.

31	W/A at Lotha Bridge, Wokha (sanctioned in 1985, completed in 1987, under CSS).	Not functioning, but unauthorised occupation by the landowner.	As above.
32	W/A at Mongsenyimti, Kokokchung (sanctioned in 1987 under CSS, but not completed)	Non-submission of completion certificate by the implementing agency (PWD).	Half constructed and not in good condition/location.;
33	W/A at Terogonyu, Kohima (sanctioned in 1989, completed in 1991, under state plan) with provision for water supply in 2002.	Not functioning.	To be considered for community management.
34	W/A at Chazouba, Phek (sanctioned in 1990, completed in 1992, under CSS).	As above.	Located on the highway, can be considered for renovation, if community/private management comes forward.
35	Cafeteria at Tsutsung, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 1993, completed in 1996, under CSS).	As above.	Can be considered for community/private management.
36	Rest House at Thanamir, Tuensang for Trekkers to saramati (sanctioned in 1996, completed in 1998, under CSS)	As above.	Can be considered for community.
37	W/A at Tamlu, Tuensang (sanctioned in 1996, completed under state plan).	As above.	As above.
38	W/A at Namtola, Mon (sanctioned in 1995, completed in 1998, under CSS).	As above.	As above.

39	W/A at Bhandari, Wokha (sanctioned in 1998, completed in 2000, under CSS).	As above.	As above.
40	Tourist Resort at Doyang (sanctioned in 1998, completed in 2001, under CSS).	As above.	As above.
41	Tourist Resort at Dzukou, Kohima (sanctioned in 1998, under CSS and still under construction)	Under construction.	Will be run and managed by the community.
42	Tourist Resort at Dzulakie, Kohima (sanctioned in 1998, completed in 2001, under CSS).	Not functioning.	Request for management by the VC received in the dept.
43	Public amenity at High School Junction, Kohima (sanctioned in 1999, completed in 2001).	Running.	Leased out to private party.
44	Public amenity at High School Junction, Kohima.	Running.	Leased out to private party.
45	Cafeteria at State Museum, Kohima (sanctioned in 1999, completed in 2000).	Running.	Leased out to Art & Cultural Dept.
46	W/A at Satsuphene, Wokha (sanctioned in 1999, completed in 2000 under CSS).	Running.	Request for management by the VC received in the dept.
47	Development of Chuziezie Lake, Kohima with cafeteria, toilet facility, boat house (sanction in 1999, completed in 2001)	Completed, but not functioning (land settlement between Fishery Dept. and Tourism to be finalised).	To be maintained by community/private management.

48	View-point at Pulei Badze, Kohima (sanctioned in 1999, under CSS and still under construction.	Not completed.	As above.
49.	Development of Amokloshi Lake, Mokokchung (sanctioned in 2000, still under construction.	Not completed.	As above.
50	Resort at Kongro Menden, Ungma, Kokokchung (santion in 2000, still under construction).	Not completed.	As above.

The buildings are in a very poor condition, and cannot be utilised in their present state.

## APPENDIX – j

### DETAILS OF THE CENTRALLY SPONSORED SCHEMES, NAGALAND

Sl. No.	Name of the Project	Dt. & Year of Sanction	Central Share in Lakhs	Amt. Recept. GOI in Lakhs	State Share in Lakhs	Dt. of sub. of PR/UC LTD.	Status of the Project.	No. of Rooms
	C.S.S. 1993-94							
1.	Const. of cafeteria at Tsutsung between Mokokchung & Tuensang	No. 5-PSW(26)92 Dt. 30/05/93	4.69	4.00	1.03	18/02/96	Commissioned on 13/06/97	
	C.S.S. 1994-95							
2.	Const. of Tourist Lodge at Shilloi Lake	No. 5-PSW(10)95 Dt. 21/03/95	8.72	7.00	1.05	14/03/97	Incomplete, under PWD	
	C.S.S. 1995-96							
3.	Const. of Cafeteria at Mhalie Peseyie Lake, Dimapur	No. 5-PSW(19)95 Dt. 23/03/95	14.36	11.50	11.5	20/03/97	Completed, U/C, LTC, CC submitted. Awaited final instalment.	
	C.S.S. 1995-96							
4.	Const. of Wayside Amenities at Namtola, Mon District	No. 5-PSW(19)96 Dt. 27/03/96	9.08	8.00	2.74	24/05/99	Work completed. Full fund received-Goi.	

5.	Const. of Tourist Rest House at Longwa in Mon District	No. 5-PSW(21)96 Dt. 27/03/96	9.14	9.14	3.79		Work completed.	
6.	Const. of Rest House at Thanamir, Tuensang.	No. 5-PSW(20)96 Dt. 27/03/96	6.16	5.16	3.11	12/11/99	Work completed.	

7.	Const. of Rest House at Mt. Tiyi-Wokha	No. 5-PSW(18)96 Dt. 27/03/96	5.50	4.40	2.93	29/05/99	Work completed.	
	C.S.S. 1996-97							
8.	Const. of Rest House at Poilwa, Kohima	No. 5-PSW(64)96 Dt. 23/12/96	9.26	9.26	2.55	16/03/99	Work completed.	
9.	Devp. of Water-Fall at Chumukedima, Dimapur	No. 5-PSW(45)96 Dt. 20/12/96	23.00	23.00	4.00	22/03/99	Work completed.	
10.	Devp. of Water-Fall at Seithekiema, Dimapur	No. 5-PSW(45)96	29.00	23.00	5.37	22/03/99	Work completed.	
11.	Refurbishment	No. 11-P&C(34)96(5)	39.36	27.00	5.50	11/09/99	15% of the	

	of Monument Kachari Rajbari Ruins, Dimapur	Dt. 31/12/96					total project was done, however, due to the resentment of the Kachari community was kept in abeyance & fund diverted to T/L, Dimapur-beautification.	
	C.S.S. 1997-98							
12.	Upgradation cum Expansion of Tourist Lodge, Dimapur	No. 9-PSW(29)97 Dt. 17/03/99	60.00	60.00	16.71		Completed.	
13.	Const. of Tourist Resort at Dzukou, Kohima	No. 9-P&C(30)97 Dt. 27/03/98	29.34	8.94	7.8		Under progress. 30% of work completed. U/C submitted.	

14.	Water Sports Equipments	1997-98	24.50	24.50		29/07/98	Procured.	
15.	Festival Infrastructure	1997-98	3.00					

	C.S.S. 1998-99							
16.	Const of Way Side Ameniti es at Satsuph en, Wokha.	No. 9-P&C(23)98 Dt. 23/03/99	15.00	4.50	5.65	2001	Comple ted, docume nts submitt ed, awaitin g final instalm ent.	
17.	Const. of Dormito ry at Zhuro Chump ho in Wokha District.	No. 9-P&C(24)98 Dt. 11/02/99	15.00	12.00	5.08	LTD 28/01/02	Comple ted. 8/3/02 submitt ed C.C/U/ C,T/I	
18.	Devp. of Tourist Bungalo w at Zukhum ki, Wokha	No. 9-P&C(28)98 Dt. 14/01/99	40.00	12.00	12.00		Amoun t diverte d to T/I Wokha, sanctio n awaited from GOI.	
19.	Devp. of Holiday Resort at Doyang , Wokha.	No. 9-P&C(25)98 Dt. 18/03/99	20.00	16.00	5.80	LTD 28/01/02	Comple ted, all papers submitt ed, awaitin g final instalm ent.	
20.	Devp. of Tourist Sports Resorts cum Rest House at Dzulaki e, Kohima .	No. 9P&C(27)98 Dt. 11/01/99	10.00	8.00	2.93	LTD 28/01/02	Comple ted, all papers submitt ed, awaitin g final instalm ent.	

21.	Devp. of Tourist Village at Chumukedima.	No. 9-P&C(2)98 Dt. 24/02/99	50.00	15.00	45.00		Site development under progress.	
22.	Tourist Hut at Ungma, Mokokchung.	No. P&C(26)98 Dt. 24/02/99	20.00	16.00	8.08	LTD 28/01/02	Completed, all papers submitted. Awaiting final installment.	

23.	Pilgrim Centre at Impur, Mokokchung.	No. 9-P&C(8)99 Dt. 31/03/99	25.00	20.45	8.26	LTD 28/01/02	Completed. U/C,L/ T CC submitted. 3 <sup>rd</sup> installment sanction awaited 08/03/02	
24.	Basic Tourist Infrastructure at Kohima.	No. 9-P&C(9)99	22.74	18.37	22.75		Completed, all papers submitted, sanction for final installment. Received on 24/01/02.	
	C.S.S. 1999-2000							
25.	Expansion & Upgradation of Tourist Lodge	No. 9-P&C(44)99 1999-2000	40.00	40.00	8.76		Completed.	

	at Kohima							
26.	Devp. of Tourist Bungalow with Heritage Lodge, Dimapur	No. 9-P&C(46)99 Dt. 20/10/99	18.31	18.31	6.63		Completed.	
27.	Devp. of Rural Amenities, Khonoma.	1999-2000	20.00	6.00	6.44		Under progress, 2 <sup>nd</sup> instalment awaited.	
28.	Devp. of Internal Link Roads & Signages.	No. 9-P&C(47)99 1999-2000	17.00	5.12	14.10		Completed. All papers submitted, awaiting final instalment.	
29.	Devp. of Chuzie Lake, Kohima	No. 9-P&C(52)99 Dt. 11/11/99	20.00	16.00	6.06		Completed. CC submitted on 08/03/02	
30.	Devp. of Pulei Badze Pavilion, Kohima	No. 9-P&C(42)99 Dt. 20/10/99	15.00	12.50	5.00		Under progress. U/C, T/C submitted, 3 <sup>rd</sup> instalment sanction awaited. CC 08/03/02	
31.	Devp.	No.	25.47	7.64	6.25	LTD	Comple	

	of Tourist Pilgrim Centre Camp at Vankhusing.	9-P&C(42)99 Dt. 14/06/99				28/01/02	ted, all papers submitted, awaiting final instalment.	
32.	Const. of Rural Amenities at Longkhum, Mkg.	No. 9-P&C(48)99 1999-2000	20.00	16.00	5.00		Under progress. U/C, T/C submitted, 3 <sup>rd</sup> instalment sanction awaited. CC 08/03/02	
33.	Fairs & Festivals.	1999-2000	6.00		1.80		Completed.	
34.	Const. of Tourist Reception Centre, Dimapur.	No. 9-P&C (50)99 Dt. 25/10/99	27.00	27.00	11.83		Completed.	
35.	Devp. of Sungkotenem Lake, Mokokchung.	No. 9-P&C(49)99 Dt. 20/10/99	10.00	10.00	4.00		Completed.	
36.	Tourism Publicity.	1999-2000	10.00		6.7		Completed.	
37.	Devp. of Tourist Computer.	1999-2000	5.12		3.25	U/C 2001	Completed.	
38.	Trekking Equipm	1999-2000	29.94		29.94		Completed.	

	ents.							
39.	Const. of Liphanyan, Governor's Camp, Wokha	No. 9-P&C(53)99 1999-2000	25.00	25.00	7.77		Completed.	
	2000-2001							
40.	Pilgrimage Centre at Molungyimsen.	No. 9-P&C(61)2000 2000-2001	15.64	5.00	29.13		50% work completed. U/C submitted, sanction for 2 <sup>nd</sup> instalment. Received 24/01/02	
41.	Devp. of Kohima Lake Fire-brigade.	No. 9-P&C(8)01 2000-2001	33.22	10.00	11.03		Initial stage. U/C submitted on 07/03/02.	
42.	Devp. of Amokloshi Lake, Mokokchung.	No. 9-P&C(62)2000 2000-2001	15.00	4.50	11.00		Under progress. U/C submitted on 07/03/02	
43.	Const. of Tourist Lodge at Pfutsero.	No. 9-P&C(63)2000 2000-2001	30.00	9.00	20.00		Under progress. U/C submitted on 07/03/02.	
44.	Dev. of Nature Park at Kongro	No. 9-P&C(6)2000 2000-2001	18.29	5.48	18.29		Under progress. U/C submitted	

	Menden Ungma, M.kg.						ed on 07/03/02	
45.	Wayside Amenity at Bhandari, Wokha.	No. 9-P&C(24)99 2000-2001	11.50	11.50	3.60		Completed.	

46.	Rural Infrastructure at Khezakeno, Phek.	No. 9-P&C(7)2000 2000-2001	18.00	5.40	8.48		Under progress. U/C submitted on 07/03/02.	
47.	Basic Infrastructure, Mon and Mokok chung.	No. 9-P&C(5)2000 2000-2001	14.88	4.46	20.93		Under progress. U/C submitted on 07/03/02. 0% work completed.	
	2001-2002							
49.	Expansion of Tourist Lodge, Mokok chung.		30.00	5.73			Under GOI consideration.	
50.	Const. of Tourist Lodge at Tuensang.		45.00				- do -	
51.	Basic Infrastructure at Touphe ma & Chuchuyimalang.		40.00				- do -	

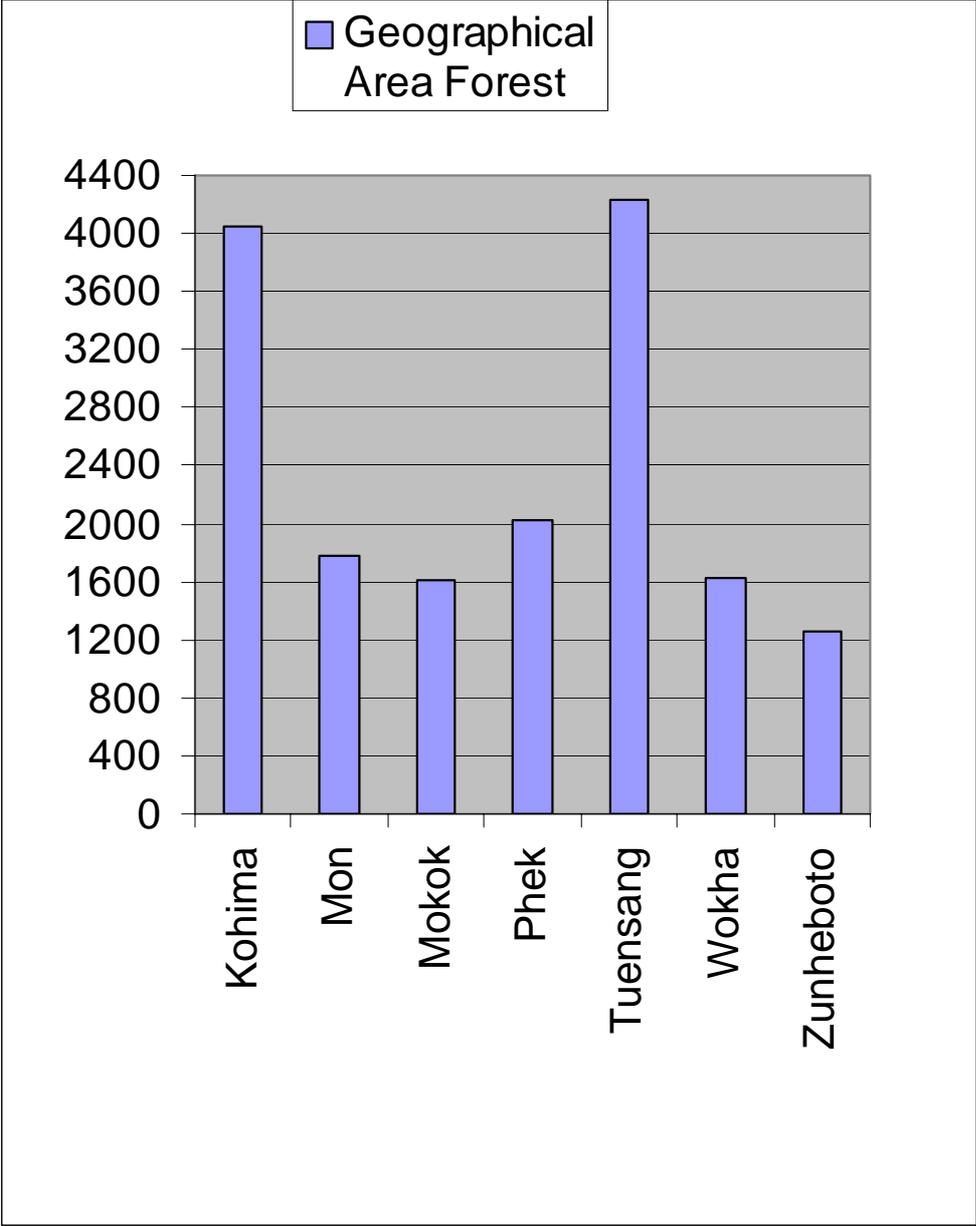
52.	Wayside Amenity at New Tesoph enyu.		18.00				- do -	
53.	Heritage Complex at Kigwema, Kohima.		55.00				- do -	
54.	Publicity support		10.00	5.00			- do -	
55.	Const. of Tourist Lodge at Peren.		40.00				- do -	
56.	Hornbill Festival.		10.00	2.81		U/C 28/01/02	Completed.	
57.	Computerisation, Mkg Mon, Wokha		6.00	4.62			- do -	
				558.17				

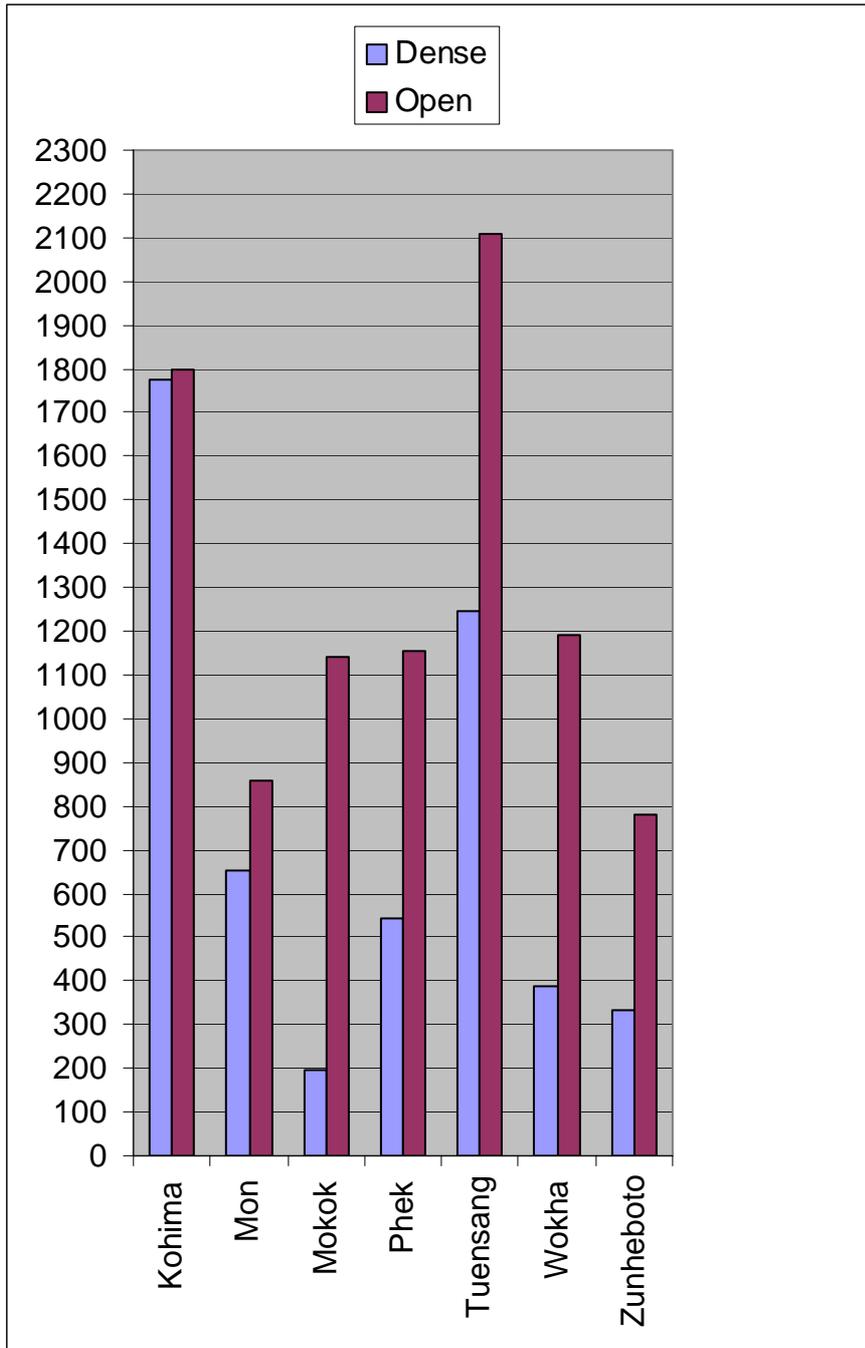
**APPENDIX – k**

**DISTRICT-WISE FOREST COVER IN NAGALAND (IN SQ.KM.)**

**IN 1999**

District	Geographical area Forest	Forest Cover		Total	Change compare to 1997	Scrub
		Dense	Open			
Kohima	4041	1775	1797	3572	+278	14
Mon	1786	651	857	1508	- 91	0
Mokok	1615	197	1140	1337	- 68	0
Phek	2026	542	1154	1696	-83	0
Tuensang	4228	1247	2110	3357	- 242	0
Wokha	1628	390	1189	1579	+ 106	0
Zunheboto	1255	335	780	1115	+ 43	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>16579</b>	<b>5137</b>	<b>9027</b>	<b>14164</b>	<b>- 57</b>	<b>14</b>

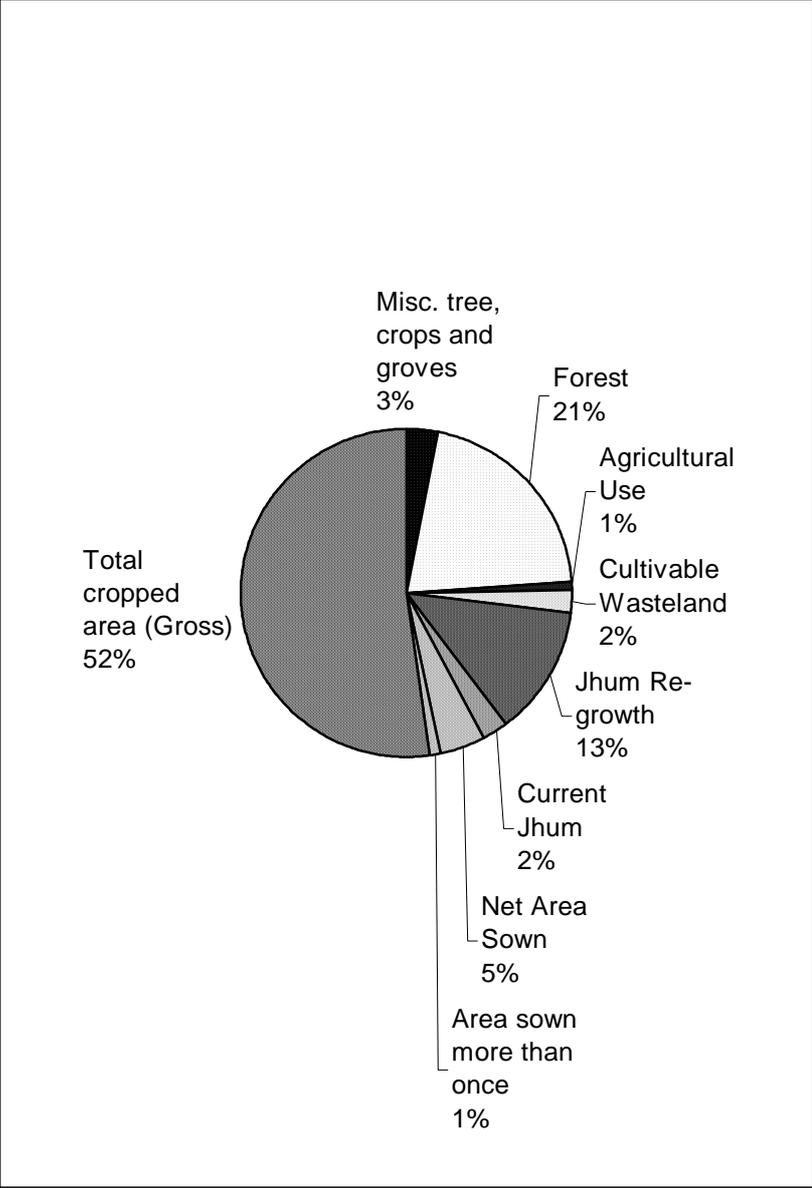




## APPENDIX – 1

### AREA UNDER DIFFERENT LAND USE IN NAGALAND

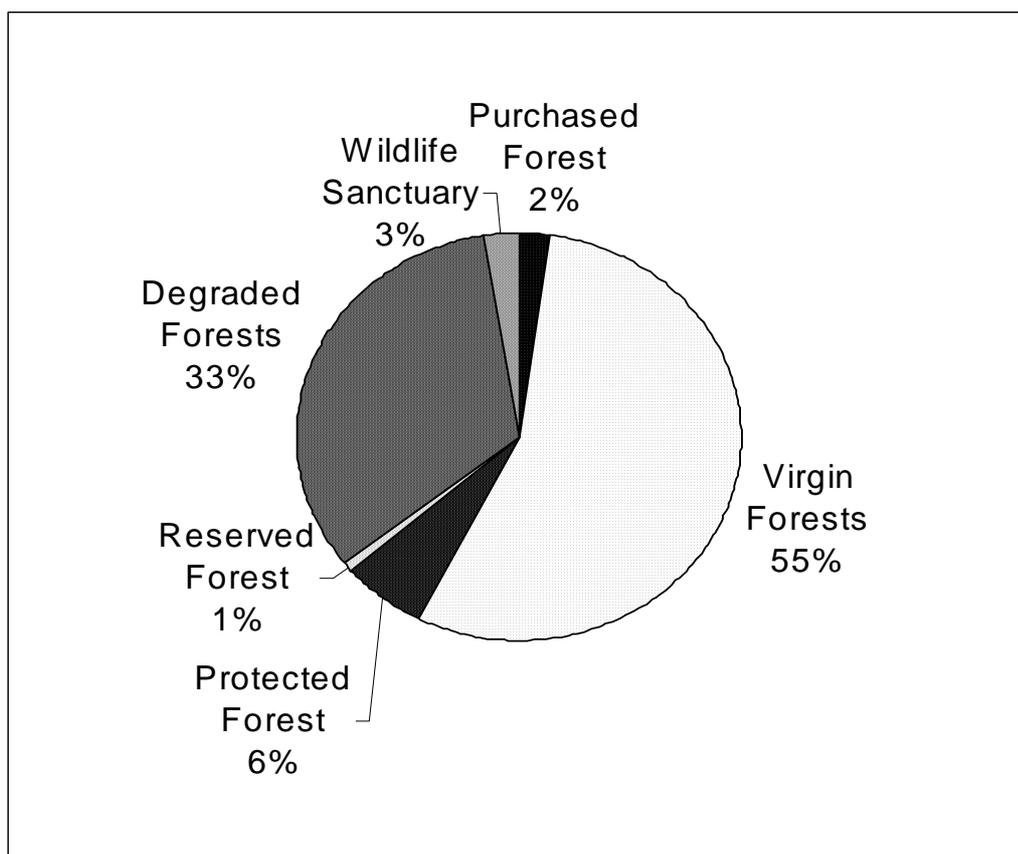
<b>Classification</b>	<b>Area (in Ha)</b>	<b>Percentage of land use</b>
Forest	862930	21.00
Land under Agricultural use	27868	1.00
Land under misc. tree crops and grooves	124252	3.00
Cultivable Wasteland	96092	2.00
Jhum Re-growth	531600	13.00
Current Jhum	101400	2.00
Net Area Sown	186700	5.00
Area sown more than once	36000	1.00
Total Cropped area (Gross	2160000	52.00

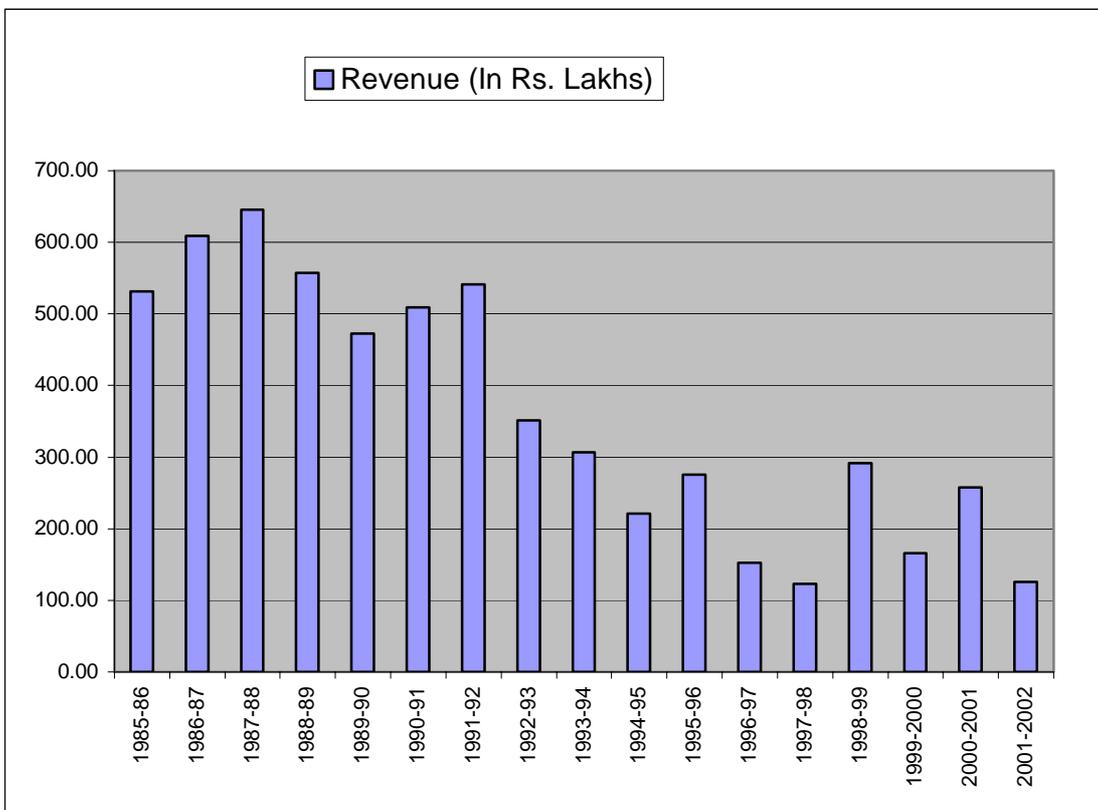


**APPENDIX – m**

**STATUS OF NAGALAND FOREST AS ON 31.01.2002**

Legal Status		Forest Area (in Ha)	Percentage of Total Forest Area
a	Reversed Forests	8583	1.00
b	Purchased Forests	19247	2.30
c	Protected Forests	50756	5.90
d	Wildlife Sanctuary	22237	2.60
e	Village Forests		
	i Virgin Forests	477827	55.40
	ii Degraded Forests	284280	32.90
		<b>862930</b>	<b>100.00</b>





## **APPENDIX – n**

# **EXCERPTS FROM ANNUAL REPORT 2001-02 MINISTRY OF ENVIRONMENT AND FORESTS GOVERNMENT OF INDIA**

## **REGENERATION AND DEVELOPMENT**

**[National River conservation Directorate, Ganga Action Plan Phase I & II, Yamuna, Gomti and Damodar Action Plan, National River Conservation Plan, Common Effluent Treatment Plant, Industrial Pollution Control, National Lake Conservation Plan, National Afforestation and Eco-development Board]**

### **National River Conservation Directorate**

The National River Conservation Directorate, which functions under the Ministry, has been entrusted with the charge of implementing the River Action Plans. The River Action Plans were undertaken based on surveys conducted by the Central Pollution Control Board (CPCB) which identified 27 grossly polluted stretches of major fresh water sources in the country, through the implementation of pollution abatement schemes. The important works being taken up under the National River Action Plan include:

- \* Interception and diversion works to capture the raw sewage flowing into the river through open drains and divert them for treatment.
- \* Sewage treatment plants for treating the diverted sewage.
- \* Low cost sanitation works to prevent open defecation on riverbanks.
- \* Electric crematoria and improved wood and help in ensuring proper cremation of bodies brought to the burning ghats.
- \* River Front Development works such as improvement of bathing ghats etc.
- \* Other minor miscellaneous works.

## **National River Conservation Plan**

The National River conservation Plan was launched in 1995 to cover 23 major rivers in 10 States of the country. Under this action plan pollution abatement works are being taken up in 57 towns. Of these four are in A. P., three in Jharkhand, one in Gujarat, eight in Karnataka, five in Maharashtra, 11 in M. P., four in Orissa, six in Punjab, two in Rajasthan and 13 in Tamil Nadu.

Out of 215 schemes of pollution abatement sanctioned under this action plan so far, 69 schemes have been completed. About 2455 million litres per day (mld) of sewage is targeted to be intercepted, diverted and treated. Out of the approved cost of Rs.1, 830.56 crore, the expenditure incurred by States totals to Rs.193.70 crore.

After the launching of the NRCP in 1995, it was decided to merge the Ganga Action Plan Phase-II with NRCP. A notification to this effect has also been issued. With this, the present approval cost of NRCP as a whole stands of Rs.3,329.42 crores covering pollution abatement works in 152 towns along polluted stretches of 27 rivers spread over 16 states.

## **National Lake Conservation Plan**

A proposal for conservation and management of 10 polluted urban lakes was put up for consideration of Cabinet Committee on Economic Affairs earlier but the Committee only approved the proposal for Dal Lake Conservation Plan 'in principle'. The Ministry also posed the project for external assistance for implementation of the National lake Conservation Plan to various Donor Agencies. None of the external funding agencies evinced any interest in the project. The Detailed Project Report of Dal Lake Conservation Plan however has been prepared by AHEC, Roorkee and sent to the State Government of J&K for their concurrence. A proposal for conservation of three small lakes namely, Powai (Maharashtra) and Ooty and Kodaikanal (Tamil Nadu) using bio-remediation technology at an estimated cost of Rs.14.99 crore was approved by the Government on 31.05.2001.

The budget estimates for the three approved lakes is as follows:

Powai	:	Rs.6.62 crore
Ooty	:	Rs.1.95 crore
Kodaikanal	:	Rs.6.33 crore

Keeping in view the decisions of NRCA taken during its 10<sup>th</sup> Meeting to give similar impetus to NLCP and NRCP, it is proposed to enlarge the scope of work under NLCP by taking up the remaining identified lakes along with new proposals on lakes received from different state Government during the X Plan.

## **National Afforestation and Eco-development Board**

National Afforestation and Eco-development Board (NAEB) was established in August 1992 in the Ministry of Environment and Forests as a sequel to the formation of the separate Department of Wastelands Development in the Ministry of Rural Development and the transfer of National Wasteland Development Board to that Department. The NAEB is mainly charged with the responsibility of promoting afforestation, tree planting, ecological restoration and eco-development activities in the country with the special focus on degraded forest areas and lands adjoining forest areas, national parks, sanctuaries and the other protected areas like the Western Himalayas, Aravallis, Western Ghats, etc. The mandate of the NAEB is:

- \* To evolve mechanism for ecological restoration of degraded forest areas and adjoining lands through systematic planning and implementation, in a cost effective manner;
- \* To restore through natural regeneration or appropriate intervention the forest cover in the country for ecological security and to meet the fuel wood, fodder and other needs of the rural communities;
- \* To restore fuel wood, fodder, timber and other forest produce on the degraded forest and adjoining lands in order to meet the demands for these items;
- \* To sponsor research and extension of research findings to disseminate new and proper technologies for the regeneration and development of degraded forest areas and adjoining lands;
- \* To create general awareness and help foster people's movement for promoting afforestation and eco-development with the assistance of Voluntary Agencies, Non-Governmental Organisations, Panchayati Raj Institutions and others and promote participatory and sustainable management of degraded forest areas and adjoining lands;
- \* To coordinate and monitor the Action Plans for afforestation, tree planting, ecological restoration and eco-development; and
- \* To undertake all other measures necessary for promoting afforestation, tree planting, and ecological restoration and eco-development activities in the country.

## **Integrated Afforestation and Eco-Development Project Scheme (IAEPS)**

This is a 100% centrally sponsored scheme intended to promote afforestation and development of degraded forests and adjoining lands by adopting an integrated approach and management of these areas on a watershed basis with people's participation. This scheme has also been extended to include 100% centrally sponsored Coastal Shelterbelt plantations after Orissa Cyclone of 1999 as a thrust area. The revised Ninth Plan allocation for the scheme is Rs.247.00 crores with a physical target for treating 2.27 lakhs ha. of degraded areas. A total of 160 projects

including 13 for Coastal Shelterbelt plantations and 31 for Forest Development Agency projects have been sanctioned so far to the States in the Ninth Plan with a total project cost of Rs.310.25 crores. Expenditure during 2001-02 (as on 15.01.2002) was Rs.57.63 crores.

### **Conservation and Development of Non-Timber Forest Produce including Medicinal Plants (NTFP)**

Under this 100% centrally sponsored scheme, financial assistance is provided to the State Governments for increasing production of Non-Timber Forest Produce (NTFP) including Medicinal Plants. It has a special focus on tribal population for whom NTFP is an important source of livelihood. The revised Ninth Plan allocation for the scheme is Rs.80.50 crores. A total of 75 projects have been sanctioned so far to the States in the Ninth Plan at a total cost of Rs.100.14 crores. Expenditure during 2002-02 (as on 15.01.2002) was Rs.19.77 crores.

### **Bamboo and Medicinal Plantation Projects**

Recently, bamboo and medicinal plantations have been identified and declared as one of Thrust Areas of the Ministry. Though such species are planted as part of mixed plantations taken up under the ongoing NTFP scheme, projects solely for Bamboo and Medicinal plantations are now being sanctioned separately under the scheme. A total of 21 projects with an outlay of Rs.20.69 crores for covering an area of 30,163 ha. under bamboo plantations and 18 projects with an outlay of Rs.8.60 crores for raising medicinal plants over an area of 5,285 ha. have been sanctioned during the Ninth Plan. During 2002-02 an amount of Rs. 6.58 crores for bamboo plantation and Rs. 2.35 crores for medicinal plants have been released to the State Governments as on 15.01.2002.

### **Shifting Cultivation (Jhum)**

Taking cognisance of the aggravation caused in terms of soil erosion and depletion of natural resources due to shifting cultivation (Jhum) in the North Eastern Region, an inter Ministerial Task Force has been constituted in the Ministry to evolve a holistic and integrated approach for sustainable management of Jhum affected lands. The Task Force had organized a two-day workshop during 11-12 October 2001 at Shillong, wherein Government representatives of North Eastern States, academicians, NGOs had participated in the deliberations.

## **EDUCATION, TRAINING AND INFORMATION**

[Forestry education, training and extension, Wildlife education, training and extension, National Museum of Natural History, Fellowships and Awards, Environmental Education, Awareness and Training, Centres of Excellence, Environmental Information System]

### **Grants-in-Aid to Professional Societies**

Financial assistance is provided under the scheme to professional societies and appropriate institutions, museums and science centres for developing activities and projects in the field of environment as well as to develop exhibition galleries and educational programmes relevant to ecology, environment and wildlife. Revised guidelines of the scheme were framed and widely circulated to all concerned.

During the year, various proposals, received from several organizations in the country were considered and suitable financial assistance was provided to those organizations for their proposals conforming to the objectives of the scheme.

### **Income Tax Exemption under Section 35 CCB of the Income Tax Act, 1961**

Ministry continued to recommend to the Central Board of Direct Taxes for Income Tax exemption under Section 35 CCB of the Income Tax Act, 1961 for the programmes related to the conservation of natural resources or of afforestation undertaken by Associations or Institutions.

### **Financial Assistance for Publications**

Ministry continued to provide one time grant to professional societies, voluntary organizations, institutions etc. for printing of publications aimed at promoting environmental education and awareness.

## **ENVIRONMENTAL INFORMATION**

### **Environmental Information System (ENVIS)**

In the last Second Monitoring Committee Meeting held on 21.02.2002 the following 21 Thrust Areas have been identified by the Committee for setting up EMCB-ENVIS Nodes through out the country under the project:

- \* Urban Municipal Waste Management
- \* Environmental Biotechnology
- \* Conservation of Ecological heritage and Sacred Sites in India
- \* Coastal Regulation Zone Management
- \* Environmental Audit
- \* Promotion and Maintenance of Renewable Energy Sources
- \* Environmental Law
- \* Medicinal Plants
- \* Marine Eco-systems
- \* Bamboo Conservation
- \* Coastal Shelterbelt
- \* Microorganisms and Environmental Management
- \* Eco-labelling and Promotion of Eco-Friendly Products
- \* Environmental Problems in Tea Gardens
- \* Cold Desert Eco-system
- \* Biomedical Waste management

- \* Island Eco-system
- \* Wetland Eco-system
- \* Natural Disaster Management (like earth-quake, cyclone, floods, glaciers).

Global Environmental Issues (like climate change, ozone depletion, green-house gas effect, etc.)

- \* ENVIS also continued to function as a National Focal point (NFP) and a Regional Service Centre (RSC) for South-Asia sub-Region Countries for INFOTERRA network, a Global Information Network of the United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP). As NFP and RSC of INFOTERRA, the ENVIS network provided information to several queries received from the various sub-region countries during the year.
- \* ENVIS also continued close liaison with various other national information systems in the country like National Information System on Science & Technology (NISSAT), Bio-Technological Information System (BTIS), etc., for exchange of environmental information and to avoid duplication of efforts in the field of environment and its associated areas.

## **INTERNATIONAL CO-OPERATION**

[Commission on sustainable Development, World Summit on Sustainable Development, United Nations Environment Programme, Global Environmental Facility, UNDP, UNDP/GEF Small Grants Programme, India-Canada Environment Facility, Climate Change, Ozone Layer Protection, World Bank Aided Projects]

### **India-Canada Environment Facility (ICEF)**

The India-Canada Environment Facility (ICEF) is a joint initiative of the Government of India and the Government of Canada created by the signing of a Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) between the two Governments on October 20, 1992 for the purpose of undertaking projects related to the environment.

The funding is provided by the Canadian International Development Agency. It is managed jointly by representatives from the two Governments (India and Canada). The primary focus of ICEF is to develop natural resources and enhance the environmental managerial capacity of Government/Non-government/community organisations to undertake and to manage environmentally sound development in land, water and energy sectors in India.

While projects approved by ICEF so far have focused on watershed management, future projects will concentrate on water quality and energy fields. So far 20 projects have been approved for funding under the ICEF with a total outlay of Rs.162.56 crores. The Joint Project Steering Committee is co-chaired by Joint Secretary (International Cooperation) from the Indian side and by Counsellor, Canadian High Commission.

**LIST OF REGIONAL OFFICES / ENVIS CENTRES / CENTRES OF EXCELLENCE / AUTONOMOUS / ASSOCIATED AGENCIES ETC. OF THE MINISTRY OF ENVIRONMENT & FORESTS**

**Regional Office:**

Sr. No.	Regional Office	Communication Linkages	Area
1.	Shri Promode Kant Chief Conservator of Forests (C) Regional Office (NEZ) Upland Road, Laitumkhrach Shillong –793 003	Tel : (0364) 227673 Fax: (0364) 227673	Arunachal Pradesh; Assam; Manipur; Meghalaya; Tripura; Nagaland; Mizoram and Sikkim

**Regional Centre for Eco-Development Programme:**

Sr. No.	Regional Office	Communication Linkages	Area
1.	Prof. R. S. Tripathi, Co-ordinator Co-ordinator Regional Centre for NAEB, North-Eastern Hill University Shillong –793 014	Tel : (0364) 231626 Fax: (0364) 231919	Arunachal Pradesh; Assam; Manipur; Meghalaya; Tripura; Nagaland and Mizoram

## APPENDIX – o

### GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR THE UP-GRADATION OF EXISTING TOURIST INFRASTRUCTURE

The Dept. of Tourism, Government of Nagaland, has developed various infrastructures for tourism throughout the State. The development of this facility was carried out with financial help from the Central Government. The maintenance of the infrastructure, its working, staff requirements & their salaries are however the sole responsibility of the State Government. In general the status of most of the facilities is satisfactory but they definitely need up-gradation and enhancement.

The department has developed various facilities such as:

1. Wayside Amenities
2. Restaurants / Cafeteria
3. Tourist Lodges
4. View Points / Galleries

The wayside amenities and tourist lodges are developed under different titles / nomenclatures, but with very little difference from each other. It is necessary to distinctly classify these facilities and to identify their necessity & role in tourism infrastructure. Feasibility studies for necessity of the infrastructure seem to be inadequately done. Moreover certain guidelines need to be formulated, so that the existing facilities can be upgraded according to them. These will also help in development of the new facilities.

**Nagaland falls in the category of very high seismic zone. Necessary Structural and Architectural precautions are required to make the structures earthquake resistant.**

The existing facilities need to be upgraded on various fronts, such as:

1. Structural up-gradation
2. Toilet Renovation
3. Plumbing and Sanitation
4. Electrification
5. Doors & Windows
6. Flooring
7. Plastering & painting
8. Interior Design
9. Environmental measures
10. Surrounding areas
11. Recreation facilities
12. Communication facilities
13. Management up-gradation
14. Staff accommodation

The details of each factor are as under:

### **1. Structural up-gradation**

The structures are mostly RCC framed, with partition walls of brick and bamboo mats. However high rainfall and humid conditions have weakened them to certain extents and need rectification in following areas:

- Anti termite(biological) treatment for plinth
- Waterproofing for plinth areas (damp proofing)
- Waterproof plastering for external walls
- Leakage rectification
- Proper rainwater harvesting or disposal
- Roof overhangs or window chajja repair
- Repair and waterproofing of overhead tanks
- Plinth protection for all structures

### **2. Toilet Renovation**

Common toilet facilities for dormitories and attached toilets for rooms, both need up-gradation in the following areas:

- Layout & internal design for maximum comfort & utility
- Non-slippery ceramic tiling for floors and dado
- Sanitary fixture in working conditions
- Non- leaking taps
- Hot water supply for showers & washbasins
- Clean & easy to maintain buckets, mugs, toilet paper holders, soap cases, etc. to be provided
- Mirrors to be provided above wash basins.

### **3. Plumbing and Sanitation**

The water supply and drainage systems at the tourist facilities:

- Non-leaking, G.I. water supply pipe system
- Proper overflow system for tanks
- Water supply to all taps
- Proper connection to geysers for efficient use of water
- All drainage pipes to be laid to proper slope
- All drainage pipes to be connected to septic tanks, in working conditions
- Location of septic tank and soak pit to be decided as per slopes available
- Plantation to be carried out near soak pit areas

- Accumulation or stagnation of water to be avoided anywhere in the campus
- Surface water drainage to be planned properly

#### **4. Electrification**

The electric supply at the facilities is satisfactory. The rooms have non-concealed wiring system. Following improvements need to be done:

- Proper planning and redesign of the layout
- User friendly location of switches
- Proper necessary illumination of outdoor areas
- Proper management control to ensure energy conservation
- Stand by generator sets
- Alternate / complementary solar system

#### **5. Door & Window**

Security is a major tourist concern and hence the door and windows need to be maintained properly.

- Proper alignment of door and window frames with the walls and sealing of joints.
- Proper shutters in good condition, either polished or painted
- All fittings and fixtures should be of standardised design & in working condition
- Windows to have MS lightweight grills
- All balcony doors to open out in the balcony
- All windows to have clean curtains with proper standardised rods or pelmets
- The proportion of keys and key chains to be user friendly

#### **6. Flooring**

The flooring of various rooms to be treated differently as per use and traffic

- Reception lobbies and dining areas to preferably have polished stone flooring. Mirror polish to be avoided
- Kitchen areas to have stone flooring with dado of ceramic tiles. All wash areas to have ceramic tiling
- Local flooring materials such as pigmented PCC / IPS to be maintained properly
- Individual rooms and dormitories to have marble mosaic, stone or any local material flooring. The choice should be made depending upon budget availability and maintenance possible.
- Use of ceramic tile flooring in living areas to be avoided

- Use of wall to wall carpets should be restricted to deluxe suites / VIP rooms only

## **7. Plastering & painting**

The external surfaces should be properly treated and maintained for a longer life of the structure.

- Waterproof plastering to be done
- Waterproof cement painting to be done for external surfaces
- All steel works to be painted in enamel paints

## **8. Interior Design**

The interiors should be planned for maximum wear and tear and for minimum maintenance.

- The layout should be functional and user friendly
- Local materials and technology should be given preference
- The design could be standardised but should also incorporate local crafts and techniques
- The upholstery should be simple
- Undue ornamentations should be avoided.
- Stress should be on maintaining cleanliness
- Light fixtures to be of simple design and maintenance free
- Built-in furniture to be preferred wherever possible
- Various fittings and fixtures to be of standard design and make
- The style of interiors should have local influence

## **9. Environmental measures**

Various environmental measures should be incorporated within their existing set-up of the tourist facilities. These could be the following:

- Use of solar energy water heating systems
- Rain water harvesting
- Recycling and use of waste water for gardening
- Developing a kitchen garden
- Use of solar lights for outdoor areas
- Avoid plastic and use cloth / jute bags etc.
- Use of recycled handmade paper in stationery
- Separation of garbage and conversion into manure by composting

## **10. Surrounding areas**

The surrounding areas to be developed for the use of people

- Parking areas to be well demarcated and visually screened with plantations
- Outdoor dining areas to be well developed and maintained
- Gardens to be well landscaped and maintained especially for the use of children
- If pets such as cats, dogs, rabbits are being maintained by the staff then their proper care should be ensured
- Outdoor activities should be encouraged
- Television rooms, card rooms, etc should be encouraged in semi covered (verandah) areas
- Jogging tracks, yoga grounds, meditation areas should be provided in natural ambience without any built structures

## **11. Recreation activities**

Various recreation activities should be provided for tourist:

- Cultural programmes in association with local groups or students could be arranged
- Local food festivals could be arranged
- A small workshop in local handicrafts on once a weekly basis can be arranged, especially during peak season
- The premises could have a simple badminton / tennis court, carom and card rooms.
- Tourist facilities in sanctuaries / national parks should discourage television

## **12. Communication facilities**

The tourist lodges should provide for various communication facilities:

- Each lodge should have a PCO / STD / ISD facility. Internet facilities should also be provided.
- A provision for a post box on the premises should also be made.
- The contacts of local medical facility, chemist, courier services, etc. should be kept available
- In case if the tourist lodges do not have their own transport vehicle, then state transport buses connecting to major towns should have a mandatory halt at the tourist lodge.
- Similar arrangements can also be made with local taxi service providers

### **13. Management up-gradation**

One of the major factors that need up gradation is the local staff. It could cover following aspects:

- Short term training programmes
- Strict adherence to rules and regulations
- Service staff training and monitoring
- Dress codes for staff – Managerial / Attendants / Service etc.

### **14. Staff accommodation**

Staff accommodation should be provided near the facility.

- Staying of staff members in one of the rooms should be discouraged
- The caretakers residence should be near the reception areas
- Other accommodation should be near the service areas and away from the public places

## APPENDIX – p

### GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF NEW TOURIST FACILITIES & INFRASTRUCTURE

Most of the tourist infrastructure created does not follow any system or procedure in any of its development. As a result most of structures do not bear a strong identity or link amongst themselves. Moreover they fall short on many fronts such as excessive capacity or the designs are standardised on typical PWD patterns.

**Nagaland falls in the category of very high seismic zone. Necessary Structural and Architectural precautions are required to make the structures earthquake resistant.**

Following are few guidelines / procedures for development of the various facilities provided by the department. They could be categorised as under:

1. Definition
2. Role of various tourist facilities
3. Feasibility study guidelines
4. Site selection criteria
5. Brief for design
6. Guidelines for architectural design
7. Guidelines for construction methods
8. Guidelines for Interior design and execution
9. Guidelines for Landscaping and signage
10. Guidelines for Environmental design

#### A. **WAYSIDE AMENITIES:**

1. **Definition:** It can be defined as a minimal facility located en-route to any major tours or tourist destination, providing basic toilet, eating & emergency staying facilities.
2. **Role:** Wayside amenities have become an important facility today, especially when road transport has become much faster. They have in a way replaced motels. They are especially preferred in undeveloped terrains, where various services are not generally available.
3. **Feasibility study Guidelines**
  - Study of tourist traffic for previous 3 years to justify the development of infrastructure to be provided
  - Study of private lodging and boarding facility available in the vicinity and their quality of service
  - Study to determine the income group of frequent travellers
  - Study to determine the communication system available

- Study to determine the no of beds capacity required
  - Preparation of brief and design of the infrastructure
  - Estimation of construction budget and running costs for first 5 years
  - Estimation of staff requirements and their remuneration
  - Revenue generation and breaking even points
  - Strategy for privatisation
  - Incentives for private development in case if departmental development is not feasible
4. **Site selection criteria:** For selection of sites for wayside amenities following criteria should be fulfilled.
- The site should be located a major road (National highway or State highway) connecting two or more tourist destinations
  - It should preferably be on the major road and easily accessible
  - There should no other resting facility available at nearby distance
  - Basic facilities such as water and electricity should be available
  - The site should be aesthetically pleasing
  - It could be near an undeveloped village
5. **Brief for design:** The Wayside amenities should be designed with following brief.
- Toilet facilities for both men & women, catering for a 40 persons bus-load. The toilets should have urinals, W. C.s, bathrooms, washbasins with mirrors & dry areas for changing. Accessories such as toilet paper, tissues, napkins should be provided.
  - Solar water heating system for toilets and kitchen
  - Drinking water fountains fitted with water purifiers. Design of water fountains should be such that use of cups/glass should be avoided.
  - Both toilet facilities & drinking water fountain areas should have adequate numbers of dust-bins/garbage cans.
  - A fast food counter serving selected few snacks and beverages & dining area.
  - A small food & beverage counter for selling of dry or packaged food products and packaged/bottled water, cold drinks etc.
  - Two twin bedded non A. C. rooms with attached toilets having minimal furniture, clean linen.
  - One 6 bedded non A. C. dormitory without attached toilet, having minimal furniture & clean linen.
  - Pay phone booth having PCO, STD & ISD facility.
  - First aid facilities.
  - Small residential quarters for Manager.

## **6. Guidelines for architectural design**

- The architectural character should be in harmony with the existing vernacular architectural style
- It should be site specific and follow the natural levels / slopes of the land
- Layout design should provide for enough parking space, separate wheelchair access, service entry etc.
- The planning should be climate specific and designed accordingly for best human comfort without mechanical means
- The structure should be maximum ground + one storey high
- Use of terraced roof should be avoided and if necessary utmost care to be taken for its waterproofing.
- Location of overhead water tanks should be considered while massing of various built forms and they should be suitably incorporated in the overall design.
- Various ancillary systems such as solar water heating, their functional requirements should be planned in the design itself.
- There should be sufficient roof overhang for wall protection
- Location of doors and windows should be such that it gives maximum protection from rain (having chajja or opening onto a verandah / balcony) and at the same time allowing for cross ventilation
- Layout and design of toilets should be of international standards and special attention should be given to materials, their durability and low maintenance
- Waterproofing and drainage should be planned properly taking into account existing land gradient
- Septic tank and soak pit should be located away from the bore well
- Built – in furniture should be incorporated in the planning itself
- Use of local materials should be planned in design itself
- Painting scheme should be in harmony with the character of the building and the site

## **7. General Guidelines for construction technology / methods**

- If the site conditions demand a stilted structure an RCC framed structure should be planned
- All foundation pits and plinths to be given neem anti-termite treatment
- The external walls should be one brick thick masonry upto 1.0m height above plinth or alternatively totally in brick. In case of parapet walls, the above space should be in bamboo mat partitions.
- Internal toilet walls should be in half brick thick masonry
- All masonry work to have 18mm thick external sandfaced plaster and 12mm thick neroo plaster
- Externally the structures to be painted in waterproof cement paint and internally

## **8. Guidelines for Interior design**

- Plan the interiors of the structure during architectural planning stage
- Furniture for rooms and dormitories to be preferably of built-in type
- Furniture for reception area and dining could be moveable type. It could be in bamboo or cane reflecting local craftsmanship
- Materials used should be durable and of low maintenance
- Conceptually the interiors could be based on local culture of the tribes, local materials, textiles and handicrafts

## **9. Guidelines for Landscaping and signage**

- The tourist facility development should be undertaken as an integrated work of built and non-built areas
- Screening plantation to be provided along road and parking areas
- Preference to be given to indigenous plantation
- Landscaping should be as per existing land gradient. Major land works and shifting of soil should be avoided
- It should make use of existing natural features such as undulations, water streams, boulders, etc.
- Plantation should be carried out to make optimum use of sunlight, wind etc.

## **10. Guidelines for Environmental design**

- Orientation of the layout should optimise use of sunlight and wind direction
- Solar passive features should be planned to allow maximum sunlight, while minimising adverse thermal effects
- Windows and shading devices should be planned to minimise mechanical ventilation
- Solar energy water heating systems to be integrated in the planning process
- Segregation and recycling of organic and inorganic wastes to be planned within the development
- Rain water harvesting methods to be adopted
- Waste water from kitchen and toilets should be utilised in the purpose of gardening
- Local building materials to be preferred

## APPENDIX – q

### LIST OF VOLUNTARY ORGANISATIONS IN NAGALAND

1. Naga Students' Federation
2. Indian Red Cross Society
3. Scouts & Guides
4. Naga Club (Naga National Council)
5. Nagaland Voluntary Consumer Organisation
6. Youth Hostels Association of India, Nagaland
7. Dimapur Town Consumer Society
8. Voluntary Consumer Organisation, Mokokchung
9. Hill People Consumer Society, Kohima
10. National Service Scheme
11. Village Councils or *Putu Menden*
12. Naga Mothers' Association
13. Naga Hoho (Senior Citizens)
14. Nagaland Tourism Association (NTA)
15. The Mopungchukit Tourism Board
16. Khonoma Nature conservation and Tragopan Sanctuary (KNCTS)

## APPENDIX – r

### LIST OF SOME EMINENT PERSONALITIES IN NAGALAND

1. Mr. H. K. Sema – The first person from Nagaland to become the Chief Justice of High Court
2. Ms. Vesuzolu Swuro Vadeo – Won medals in National/International Archery Competitions
3. Ms. Chubalemla Ao – The first lady to receive Padma Shree award in 1981 for her outstanding social work
4. Late Mr. Mayanganokcha – Known as the Father of Education in Nagaland
5. Mr. Hokishe Sema – The first person from Nagaland to become the Governor
6. Dr. Senka Yaden – The first Doctorate Degree holder in Science. He hails from Merangkong village, Mokokchung district
7. Late Rev. Longri Ao – Known as the Man of Peace. He was from Changki village, Mokokchung district
8. Late Dr. E. W. Clark – The first missionary (American Baptist Mission) to Nagaland (1872-1911)
9. Late Mr. A. Z. Phizo – Prominent leader & President of NNC
10. Dr. T. Ao – The first Captain of Indian Olympic Football Team (1948)
11. Dr. Imti Temsula – The first lady Doctorate Degree holder in English language. She hails from Changki village
12. Dr./Rev. Noksangla – The first lady Reverend from the Northeast
13. Ms. Neichulieu Nikki Haralu – The first lady Ambassador from Nagaland (Panama – 1978-80)
14. Prof. I. Yanger – The first person from Nagaland to become the Vice Chancellor (Nagaland University)
15. Late Ms. Gaidinliu – A Freedom Fighter from Rongmei Naga tribe who fought against the British Rule. Ex-Prime Minister Nehru awarded her the title ‘The Rani’ after the independence
16. Late Dr. Imkongliba Ao – Surgeon from Aonokpu village, Mokokchung district who became one of the founders of Nagaland State
17. Late Mr. Samuel Mezbur Sekhose – A Scout, sportsman, militaryman, educationist, nature lover, doctor---- all in one, from T. Khel of Kohima village

## **APPENDIX – s**

### **CHECKLIST FOR TRANSPORT PLANNING**

(Numbers in brackets refer to the appropriate paragraphs in the Guidelines)

#### **Conceptual Planning :**

Development brief prepared. (1.75. 5.39).

Discuss with planning authority (District or Borough Council, or unitary authority, whether the development is consistent with the Structure Plan or Unitary Development Plan. (1.65)

Discuss with highway authority (county or borough council, or unitary authority, for local roads; Highway Agency for trunk roads, including motorways, in England; Welsh Office or Scottish Development Department respectively for trunk roads in Wales and Scotland) what improvements to the highway network will be needed to handle traffic generated by the development. (1.48, 1.83).

Discuss with the Passenger Transport Executive, or the Transport Co-ordinating Officer of the county or borough council or unitary authority, whether the development can be served by existing public transport routes, whether extensions or diversions to existing routes might be appropriate or whether a new service could be justified. Also discuss the outline locations of parts of the development within the site for ease of access by public transport. (1.49 to 1.52, 1.82, 5.5)

Can other developments be located to generate extra public transport ridership, or can the public transport be routed through existing developments to produce extra ridership) (1.75 to 1.79).

Discussion with planning authority possible Developer Contributions that may be required under Section 106. (5.52 to 5.57)

Is land reclamation or earth-moving involved ? If so, discuss implications for public transport access with the Passenger Transport Executive or Passenger Transport Co-ordinating Officer. (1.41)

#### **Outline Planning :**

##### **Public transport supply**

Has liaison been established with Passenger Transport Executive / local authority Transport Co-ordination Officer? (6.4)

Has traffic implications been discussed with highway authority? (6.4)

Map and list public transport services near the proposed development. Can any serve the development:

- i) without modifications?
- ii) by diverting or extending an existing service?

If a new or modified service is required, has its commercial viability been established by discussion with the PTE/TCO (2.20 to 2.25)

### **Layout (developments served by bus)**

Will the bus service proposed be attractive to users of the development (6.5 to 6.15)

Are the entry and exit points for the development compatible with the local bus network? (6.9)

Does the proposed road layout allow buses a direct route through the developments? (6.8 to 6.14)

Can buses enter and leave the development without traffic delays? If not, consult the highway authority on junction designs and bus priority measures to avoid delays. (6.42, 7.32 to 7.57)

Check bus stop locations for operational efficiency and safety. Conduct initial safety audit of bus stop locations and links to surrounding highways. (6.27 to 6.31)

Does the bus route terminate in the development? If yes, has a bus turning point and standing place been provided? (6.32 to 6.35)

Does the footpath network feed directly to bus stops? (6.3, 6.5, 6.16, 7.8)

Are entrances to buildings close to bus stops? If not, can building locations or orientations be changed to improve access? Are any destinations more than 400 m from a bus stop? Are car parks between bus stops and final destinations? (6.20 to 6.26)

Can passengers get to and from bus stops without crossing major roads? If not, are safe crossing facilities provided? Initial safety audit of pedestrian routes. (6.24, Fig. 6.7)

Has space been left for accessible bus stops and bus shelters? (7.10 to 7.14, 7.22 to 7.28)

## **Layout (developments served by rail)**

Will there be a rail station within the development? If yes, has development been discussed with the Rail Regulator, Railtrack and the local Train Operation Companies (contact through the PTE or TCO)? (1.55 to 1.62)

Will the train service proposed be attractive to users of the development?

Does the footpath network feed directly to the station? (6.3, 6.5, 6.16, 7.8)

Are entrances to buildings close to the station? If not can building locations or orientations be changed to improve access? Are any destinations more than 800 m from the station? Are car parks between the station and final destinations? (6.20 to 6.26)

Can passengers get to and from the station without crossing major roads? If not, are safe crossing facilities provided?

Is parking required at the station to attract other passengers to improve the viability of the train service?

## **Developers contribution and general**

What Developer's Contributions will be required under Section 106? (5.52 to 5.57)

Conduct initial accessibility audit of footpaths, bus stops and/or railway station for the Disability Discrimination Act 1995 (7.7, 7.4)

## **Detailed Planning**

### **Developments to be served by bus**

Does road network provide space for buses?

- i. Lane width 3.65 m on bus routes (but see 6.53 to 6.60 for residential developments).
- ii. Space for swept path at junctions. (Figures 6.10 and 6.11)
- iii. Turning point for terminating bus services. (6.32 to 6.35)
- iv. Standing space for terminating buses (6.32 to 6.35)
- v. Space for any bus priority measures. (7.32 to 7.57)
- vi. Road structure strong enough for axle loads of buses. (11.5 tonne)

### **Bus stops**

- i. Will bus stops be needed or will bus service be "hail and ride"? (6.23)

- ii. Confirm stop locations are close to final destinations for passengers.
- iii. Check stops are not isolated, windswept, near waste ground or other open space that would be perceived as hazardous by passengers.
- iv. Can buses use stops without being delayed by other traffic?
- v. Do stopped buses pose hazards for other traffic?
- vi. Is it possible to use bus boarders or kerb-side stops? Are bus bays inevitable?
- vii. Sight lines for buses and other traffic. (6.27)
- viii. Safety audit of bus stop location and design.
- ix. Drainage designed to minimise puddling at bus stops. (7.15 to 7.17)
- x. Kerb height 125 mm at bus stops. (160-180 mm at bus boarders)

### Bus stop furniture

- i. Can bus stop flag be mounted on lamp standard or bus shelter? (7.25)
- ii. Check with PTE or TCO for preferred type of shelter, and possibility of free supply by advertising company. (7.28)
- iii. Check footway width two metres minimum past the shelter. (7.22)
- iv. Check space for ramp or lift from accessible bus. (7.24)
- v. Check street lighting satisfactory for stop. (7.25)
- vi. Check planned provision of information at stops. (7.29 to 7.31)
- vii. Name of stop visible to passengers within the bus? (7.29)

### Footpaths

- i. Check routes from buildings to stops are direct and less than 400 m.
- ii. Check footpaths well overlooked with good sightlines for users.
- iii. Check footpath lighting.
- iv. Check footpath gradient preferably not steeper than five percent.
- v. Footpath surfacing prevents puddling; cross-fall or camber of two percent for drainage.
- vi. Footpath width two metres, with narrowest pinches at obstructions not less than one metre.
- vii. Check signage for pedestrians to and from bus stops.
- viii. Possibility of shelter from weather along footpaths.

### **Pedestrian safety**

- i. Check safety of pedestrian crossings at all major roads.
- ii. Conduct safety audit of pedestrian travel in development.

### **Traffic management**

- i. Do buses require priority measures within the development? If yes, identify problems needing solutions, list possible measures to solve problem select most appropriate solution. (7.32 to 7.57)

- ii. Ensure space is available for priority measures.
- iii. Do buses require priority measures entering or leaving development? If yes, liaise with highway authority to identify problems needing solution, list possible measures to solve problem, select most appropriate solution.
- vi. Do local buses carry transponders? Check with PTE/ICO to ensure systems on development compatible with any local equipment (7.51)
- v. Are traffic management measures needed to discourage car use? (7.58 to 7.62)

### Bus service

- i. Contract local bus operator through the PTE or TCO. Agree service to be provided when development occupied and timetable for service introduction.

### General

- i. Audit accessibility of footpaths, bus stops and planned bus services.
- ii. Check plans for public transport information in buildings on development.

### Developments to be served by rail

#### **Footpaths**

- i. Check routes from buildings to station are direct and less than 800 m.
- ii. Check footpaths well overlooked with good sightlines for users.
- iii. Check footpath lighting.
- iv. Check footpath gradient preferably not steeper than five percent.
- v. Footpath surfacing prevents puddling; cross-fall or camber of two percent for drainage.
- vi. Footpath width two metres, with narrowest pinches at obstructions not less than one metre.
- vii. Check signage for pedestrians to and from station.
- viii. Possibility of shelter from weather along footpaths.

### Pedestrian safety

- i. Check safety of pedestrian crossings at all major roads.
- ii. Conduct safety audit of pedestrian travel in development.

### Rail service and traffic management

- i. Liaise with Rail Regulator and Train Operating Company on rail service.
- ii. Liaise with Railtrack on station design.
- iii. Decide on need for additional parking at station.
- iv. Are traffic management measures needed to discourage car use by travellers to development?

### General

- i. Audit accessibility of footpaths, station and planned train services.
- ii. Check plans for public transport information in buildings on development.

**PUBLIC & SUSTAINABLE TRANSPORT ASSESSMENT**

**Form ST6**

Site Ref : \_\_\_\_\_

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Short Title : \_\_\_\_\_

H  ah

Adur     Chichester     Mid-Sussex  
 Arun     Crawley     Worthing

**RAIL STATION** \_\_\_\_\_ **Distance** \_\_\_\_\_  
 Services : \_\_\_\_\_

<b>BUS ROUTES Nos:</b>							Distance : _____
Operators : _____							
Frequency (Buses per Hour)	Daytime:						
	Evening:						
Funded by WSC	Sundays						
	All? Part?						

**CYCLING AND WALKING**

**SUGGESTED IMPROVEMENTS**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bus Shelters.....      | <input type="checkbox"/> Rail improvements.....         |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Evening Services ..... | <input type="checkbox"/> Bus Priority .....             |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Sunday Services.....   | <input type="checkbox"/> Ped. / Cycle Improvement ..... |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Daytime Services ..... | <input type="checkbox"/> Travel-Wise Plan.....          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Altered Routeing.....  | <input type="checkbox"/> Planning Agreement.....        |

**PARKING**

- Provide Secure, Convenient, Covered Cycle Parking  
 1 Per Bed Space     1 to every 4 Employees/Customers     Other \_\_\_\_\_

Cars / Lorries / Buses .....

**RECOMMENDED :**

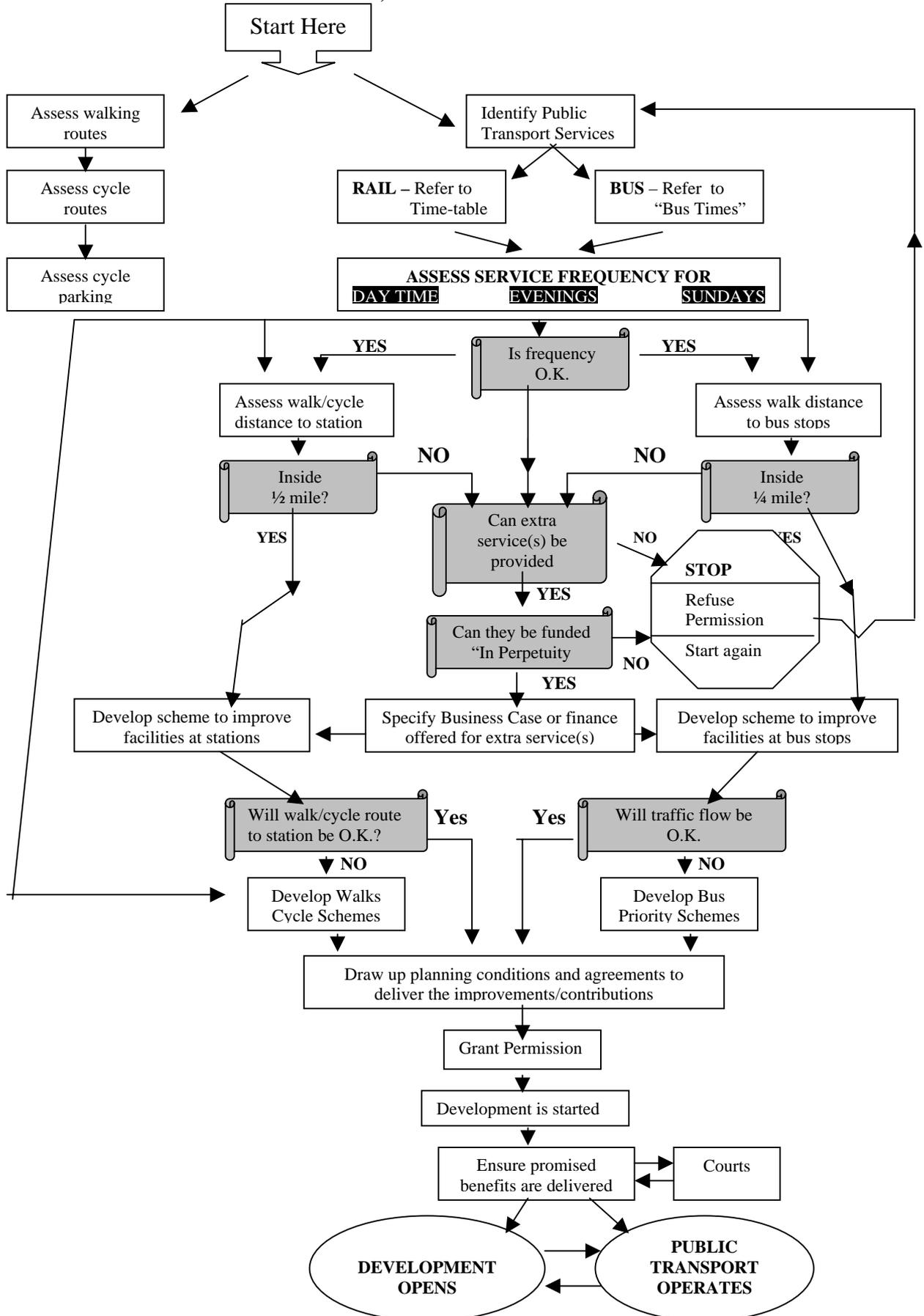
- Is Accessible to Public Transport  
 Is not Accessible to Public Transport (Reason for Refusal)  
 Is not accessible to Public Transport But could be made so by a Planning Agreement

**OTHER**

Signed : .....

**PLANNING APPLICATIONS**

**FLOW CHART FOR ASSESSING REQUIREMENTS FOR PUBLIC TRANSPORT, WALKING AND CYCLING**



## A Typical Bus Operator's Checklist

(Based on the Checklist for the Audit of Bus Services into / around Heathrow)

ROUTE No. \_\_\_\_\_ (One sheet per route. Complete both sides)

1. Status within tender procedure
2. Route length
3. End-to-End journey time Peak  
Off-peak
4. Vehicle type  
Make/age/number in fleet  
  
Percentage low floor (cost for 100%)  
  
Capacity (i) Seated (ii) Standing  
Luggage space (high/medium/low)
5. Bus stop / waiting environment  
Number of stops / Percentage with timetables  
  
Number of shelters  
  
Percentage with good facility Illuminated  
2/3 way enclosed  
Seating  
Undersized  
  
Security issues (cctv / alarms / etc)
6. Vehicle tracking  
Percentage of fleet with AVL / timescale / cost  
  
Percentage of route with real time displays / timescale / cost
7. Bus priority  
General need for bus priority (high/medium/low)  
  
Status in any bus priority programme / estimated cost  
  
Reliability of route as a whole  
  
Percentage of miles lost through congestion
8. Driver  
Customer service / attitude  
Percentage with uniforms / appearance

9. Patronage
  - i) Total patronage per route.
  - ii) Percentage of patronage to / from Heathrow area.  
(Users to / from A4 (between Hatch Lane, Compass Centre and Harlington Corner), Hatton X, Southern Perimeter Road, all terminals) – see Connections Map for area).
  - iii) Percentage year on year changes for (i) above – note any major route changes).
  - iv) Percentage year on year changes for (ii) above – note any major route changes).

10. Cost of operation

Gross annual cost of operation

Total cash revenue

Total off-bus revenue.

Net annual deficit.

The above data is for planning purposes only.

It will be kept confidential within the Heathrow Area Transport Forum.

It will be used to prioritise services and corridors which are in most need of support.

It will benchmark a patronage base for monitoring change.

If you have any additional comments, notes or suggestions please feel free to comment.

Please use only one form per route. Where routes bifurcate (74/5; 436/441; 555/6/7)  
Please use separate forms for the separate legs

## APPENDIX – t

### ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT QUESTIONS

Single-purposism, as we have seen, tends to create projects that harm the environment. Instead, we should design projects with as favourable an environmental impact as possible. This is the objective of environmental impact design.

The questions about impact in this appendix have been grouped, as general and sectoral questions, similarly to their discussion in the book. Clearly, they overlap and the list is incomplete. It needs to be elaborated. As land-users, we tend to take an interest in the environmental consequences of our neighbours activities and to resent questions about our own. We are aggrieved when public goods are damaged and delighted when the supply is augmented. If damage is unavoidable, we expect compensatory measures. Environmental compensation, delivered at the point of impact, is economically more efficient than financial compensation. It goes to the people who have suffered a loss. We should, by asking questions, audit *the impact of development projects on public goods*.

- \* **when a landowner applies for planning permission, a building licence or authorization from an environmental quality regulator;**
- \* when public money is to be spent on a project, so that society can obtain the maximum social benefit at the minimum social cost.

**The questions can be used to carry out a public goods audit of proposed development projects.**

### PART 1 – General questions

*Objectives* Is it a single-objective project or a multi-objective project?

*Planning process* Have the affected landowners and land-users helped to generate the plan?

*Impact on public goods* Will the existing stock of public goods be increased or decreased?

*Compensation* If existing public goods will be damaged, what environmental compensation it proposed?

*Relationship to local plans* Does the project design contribute to local plan objectives for improving the stock of environmental public goods (natural, social and visual)?

*Urban design* How does the project design relate to local urban design objectives?

*Sustainability* Does the project design contribute to sustainability objectives?

*Transport* How will the project encourage the use of self-powered transport and public transport?

*Vegetation* Will the project design increase or reduce the quantity and diversity of plant life?

*Surface water* Will the surface-water runoff from the site be increased or reduced?

*Landform* How does the project design relate to the habitat potential plan for the locality?

*Habitats* How does the planting design relate to the habitat potential plan for the locality?

*Greenspace* Is the project design compatible with the objectives of the local greenspace plan?

*Recreation* Is the project design compatible with local recreation objectives?

*Air* How does the project design relate to air quality objectives?

*Scenic plan* Is the project set in an area of low, medium or high scenic quality? How will the scenic quality be affected by the project design?

*Spatial quality* How does the project design relate to the local plan for spatial quality?

*Skyline* How will the local skyline be affected by the project design?

*Zoning* what landscape character zones overlap the site?

*General character* How does the development project respond to the Genius of the proposed character designed to be identical to, similar to or different from that of its surroundings? What is the value of the SID Index for the projects?

*Detailed character* How does the development project respond, in detail, to the character of its surroundings (e.g. architectural style, plant materials, construction materials etc.). Are the design details intended to be identical, similar or different?

*Nature* Has the project been designed *with* nature or against nature?

*Language* What does the project 'say', in the language of the environment?

*Archetypal patterns* What extension will be made to larger-scale Alexander patterns? What provision will be made for smaller-scale Alexander patterns?

*Material colour* Will the colour relationship with local construction and plant materials be one of similarity, identity or contrast?

*Planning information system* Has the project design been checked against the historical records and development plans in the local planning information system?

## **PART 2 : Sectoral quations**

### **PUBLIC OPEN SPACE**

*Access* Is the open space designed to be bounded or unbounded?

*Character* Will the predominant character be that of a man-made or a natural area?

*Use* What provision will be made for specialist activities in the public open space?

*Colour* What is the most appropriate colour to symbolize the intended character of the public open space?

*Planning* How will the public open space relate to adjacent land-uses?

*Historic conservation* How does the present design reflect previous designs for the site?

*Nature conservation* How does th public open space contribute to wildlife, water and air-quality objectives?

*Markets* will there be a provision for the sale of goods in the public open space?

*Management* will the management of the open space be funded with national, regional local or community finance, by a public-private partner-ship or by a private organization? Has creation of a non-profit community trust been evaluated?

*Ownership* Will there be a direct relationship between the ownership and the control of the public open space?

*Greenways* In what sense will the open space be “green”? For what types of traffic will it be a “way”?

## **RESERVOIRS**

*SID index* Is the reservoir designed to be similar to or different form its surroundings?

*Reservoir fringe land* will the waterfront land be urban, agricultural estuarine, recreational or natural?

*Urbanization* Is it appropriate to design the reservoir in conjunction with a new settlement?

*Reservoir margin* What physical and biological works will be carried out before the land is inundated (e.g. to create beaches at water level and habitats beneath water level)?

*Recreation* How will the reservoir improve opportunities for outdoor recreation?

*Swimming* What provision will be made for outdoor swimming?

*Habitat creation* How will the reservoir contribute to creation of new habitats?

*Scenery* How will the reservoir improve the scenery?

*Archaeology* Has the land to be flooded been considered as an underwater archaeological reserve?

## **MINERAL WORKINGS**

*Quality* Will the landscape be at least as useful and as beautiful after mining as before?

*Plant and machinery* How will adverse side-effects be mitigated? What beneficial side-effects are planned?

*Mineral operation* What harm will be done? How will the landform be adapted to produce a beneficial end-result?

*Phasing* Is there a phasing plan for the completion of mineral workings and the establishment of after-uses?

*Character* at surface level, will the post-mining and pre-mining landscapes be similar, identical or different?

*After-use* Has consideration been given to planning for a range of possible after-uses?

*Landownership* Should the community help acquisition? Will the land pass into public ownership when the extraction process is complete?

## **AGRICULTURE**

*Character* Should the existing character of the agricultural land be conserved, or should a different character be developed?

*Public goods* What public goods are produced? What public goods could be reproduced? Who will pay for the public goods? Should the landowner receive a wage or a rent for the public goods provided?

*Mapping* From which points of view has the agricultural land been mapped?

*Strategic reserve* Will the farm provide a strategic reserve capacity for food production? If land goes out of production, how long would it take to bring it back into production?

*Conservation* Will the farm contribute to water conservation, historic conservation and scenic conservation objectives?

*Recreation* Will access to the countryside be improved?

*Food* Will the supply of wild food and non-industrial food be improved?

*Geography* Has the supply of public goods been considered in relation to their local, regional national and international availability?

*Implementation* What arrangements have been made to implement a farm landscape plan?

*Ownership* Will any easements or common rights be purchased or pass into public ownership for another reason?

*Finance* Will the public benefit from money spent on agricultural production subsidies?

## **FORESTRY**

*Character* Will the forest be beautiful and productive? Will it have sparkling streams, bright pools, dark swamps, open glades, black groves and many animals?

*Internal land-relationship* How many land-use objectives have been incorporated into the forest design plan?

*External land-use relationships* How has the forest design been integrated with the pattern of surrounding land-uses?

*Myth* Have any myths or stories been incorporated into the forest design?

*Land cover* Which parts of the forest will be wooded and which will be open land?

*Food* What wild food will be produced within the forest?

*Wildlife* How will wildlife benefit from the forestry operations?

*Ancient woods* What areas have been set aside to become ancient woods?

*Roads* Have recreational, aesthetic and conservation objectives been considered in the design of forest roads, rides and fire breaks?

*Public participation* How will the local community help to design and manage the forest?

*Silviculture* Which silvicultural systems will be used? Will any of the forest land be clear-felled or managed by selection forestry?

*Management* Will forestry objectives receive different priorities in different compartments of the forest?

*Landscape plan* Will the forest landscape plan be published, discussed with community groups, deposited in local libraries and exhibited on note boards?

## **RIVERS AND FLOODS**

*Drainage* Will the volume and rate of surface-water runoff from the site be increased or reduced?

*Flooding* Which areas of town and country will be allowed to flood and with what frequency?

*Detention* Will any special measures be taken to detain surface water within the development site boundary?

*Infiltration* Will surface-water infiltration be increased or reduced? What special techniques will be employed?

*Roof vegetation* Will the roofs of new buildings be vegetated? If not, why not?

*Pavements* Will porous paving be used in the development? If so, will there be an adverse impact on water quality?

*Riverworks* What is the intended use and character of the reach where the works will take place?

*Recreation* What provision will be made for outdoor swimming, boating and other recreational activities?

*Coastal works* What is the intended use and character of the coastal area where the works will take place? Is project design single-purpose or multi-purpose? Are the works designed in the context of a coastal landscape plan?

## **TRANSPORT**

*Colour* What is the most appropriate colour to symbolise the intended character of the routeway?

*Names* Will the proposed route be a road, a ride, a highway, a lane, a track, a footpath, a speedway, a bridleway, a street, an avenue or an autoroute?

*Multi-mode sharing* To what extent will traffic modes share the paved surface? To what extent will traffic modes be segregated?

*Cycling* Will a provision be made for cycling and cycle storage? Will the use of cycles and the safety of cyclists be monitored?

*Transport interchanges* Have modal interchange points been integrated with other land-uses? Do they make provision for cycle storage? Have they been designed as attractive multi-functional spaces?

*Conservation* Will historic transport routes be conserved?

*Alignment* Has the route alignment been adapted to its context? Was it produced using standard criteria from a design manual?

*Phasing* What provision has been made for future changes in the route's use and character?

*Margin details* Does the treatment of walls, fences, banks, drains and vegetation relate to local traditions, or to an innovatory landscape plan?

## **URBANIZATION**

*Location* Where will planned urbanization do the least harm and the most good? Can it be designed in conjunction with other land-uses?

*Size* Will the eventual settlement size be small, medium or large?

*New settlements* What is the best location for the new settlement from the point of view of the local community? Should a local referendum be held to choose sites for urbanization?

*Community involvement* How will the future community be represented in the planning and design process?

*Topography* How will the urbanization relate to the existing topography?

*Regional identity* How will the settlement respond to the character of the local climate, local design tradition and local materials?

*Public open space* Which land is best suited for designation as public open space?

*Earthmoving* Is there an earthmoving plan for the urbanization process?

*Water* How will the pattern of surface-water drainage be affected? Will new water bodies be created?

*Trees* Will the urbanization have an advance tree-planting programme?

*Circulation* What will be done to contribute to a sustainable transport network?

*Finance* If the urbanization benefits from public infrastructure investment, how will the public gain a return from this investment?

## **APPENDIX – u**

### **ASSESSING A BUILDING FOR ACCESS FOR DISABLED PEOPLE**

Assessing a building for access for disabled people has been called an access audit. This is often the first part of the process of improving provision in an existing building, and can, if done correctly, be the start of an ongoing project that will last the lifetime of the building.

This chapter is designed to illustrate the nature of an access audit and the features that should be looked for in such an audit. Sections cover the areas that should be examined and the ways of commissioning an audit on a building.

#### **What is an access audit?**

An access audit will examine an existing building against predetermined criteria designed to measure the ‘usability’ of the building for disabled people. Usability will range from getting in and getting around to getting out. Depending on the measurement criteria, the assessment will examine how much of the facilities can be used *independently* by disabled people. A through audit will look at more than just physical mobility and disability. It will also examine use of the services by people with sensory disabilities and mental disabilities. The limit of what is to be assessed will depend on the frame of reference of the project. All inclusive audits will examine printed material and publicity, staff attitudes and the physical and management issues within the building .

#### **Beginning a project**

Before deciding to conduct an audit of a building it is important to have a clear understanding of the following:

- \* The purpose of the audit
- \* What the criteria for measurement will be and what will be assessed
- \* The expected outcomes and their format
- \* Who is to carry out the audit
- \* The reporting of the results
- \* The follow-up procedure and evaluation of progress.

The management of audit information and the construction of the project are key factors in success of a project.

## **What are the purposes?**

**Most access audits are launched with only a vague idea of what they are intended to achieve, high expectations of what they will achieve, and a lack of perception of the management procedures involved in implementing the changes that are required. Audits are conducted for three main reasons:**

1. Comparative surveys; to gather data on the accessibility of the building or facility to build a comparative table of accessibility of buildings. Projects such as the Audit Commission were designed for this type of collection. This enables a statistical comparison of service provision across a region, and also a longitudinal approach to service provision over time.
2. Analytical surveys; to gather data which indicates the accessibility of a building for publication in reference works, directories and guides for disabled people will use to decide where they should go for services. The data is then disseminated through organizations such as Artsline, which provides a telephone enquiry service for disabled people in London to find details of entertainment and more recently, restaurants.
3. Adaptive surveys; to gather information which is designed to generate change. These audits measure area of inaccessibility and generate recommendations for improvement. Good audits of this nature will also prioritise the improvements and make detailed recommendation. These recommendations may indicate a cost associated with the change and the optimum timescale. This type of audit can be used to generate a 'master plan' for change.

**Collection of the same information can be used for all the above objectives, but the intended out come will determine how the information is collected, the process and by whom it is collected.**

## **Who should do the audit?**

**Research that we carried out for the Arts Council of England in 1993 indicated that the most successful audits and surveys were undertaken by a mixture of disabled and able-bodied audit teams using questionnaires designed primarily by disabled people. Success is taken to mean that the data collected were accurate and detailed, and represented the difficulties that a disabled person would encounter.**

Audits carried out by these groups will often fall into the first two categories of the Comparative and Analytical Survey types. In order to produce the Adaptive Survey the surveying and reporting team should be experienced in the design of building for disabled people and the processes required for their implementation. They will also need to assemble their cost recommendations from a knowledge database of products and costs of installation and building work. It is likely therefore that this type of group would include disabled people and Architects experienced in adaptive work.

## DIY audits

There are guidance documents and books on conducting your own surveys and audits. Packs, such as those from RADAR and the Centre on Accessible Environments and All Clear Designs will certainly give a large amount of information to the newcomer to the field, as will questionnaires designed by The Access Officer's Association for compliance with the Audit Commission surveys of public buildings. However, these guides and questionnaires will result in a mainly mechanistic understanding of access, and are useful only for the most cursory investigation of a building's difficulties or potential.

Kits of questionnaires and measuring devices – for measurement of door-opening forces, lighting level and ramp gradients – can be purchased from organizations such as All Clear Designs.

The other approach is to attend courses on auditing procedure, such as those run by the Centre of Accessible Environments and longer-term (one year) courses such as the 'Environmental Access' course run by the Architectural Association.

However, where a thorough assessment of the building is needed it is normally better to employ the services of professional organizations and consultants who are experienced in this area. The Centre on Accessible Environments has an Architectural Advisory Service, based on a register of architect members with experience of access; some of whom will have experience of auditing. The Centre also has experienced auditors who will carry out assessment. A condition of registration is that the organization will give you one hour of their time free to visit the building in question and provide you with advice on how they would proceed. (They may charge travel expenses). The Arts Council of England has also compiled a directory of consultants in disability and the arts, called *Off the Shelf and Into Action*. The directory breaks down groups by services offered and by geographic region and is available from the Arts Council of England for approximately £ 15.

Local access groups are extremely useful in having local knowledge as well as a wide range of experienced disabled people. Some local groups are known to the planning departments of the local council, the Social Services Department and may be in the *Yellow Pages*.

**Assistance can also be gained in the first instance from Access Officers. There are normally based in the planning department or the Chief Executive's office of the local council. An Access Officer is given the task of implementing equal opportunities where they relate to disabled people, across a council's services. They are an extremely good source of advice on access questions, and should be one of the first people to be consulted.**

It is recommended that up to three organizations are contacted to help formulate a strategy. The strategy should be drawn up into a brief, and this can then be issued to gain comparative tenders. Most briefs of this nature will ask for the experience of the

organization, measurement methodology and the criteria against which they will be measuring the building, with the output format and the likely outcomes of the survey.

## **Accessing facilities**

Access audits fall into two different categories :

1. Audits that assess the presence of facilities for disabled people.
2. Audits that are designed to assess how well the facilities in the building will *work* for disabled people.

The main types of access audits are illustrated in Figure 3.1

The first type of audit is frequently carried out by questionnaire on a ‘ticking’ basis – i.e. the question is asked ‘Is there an accessible toilet?’ The response is entered into a tabular reporting procedure to show the presence or absence of such a facility.

The second type of audit involves a visit to the building where the nature of the facility and how well it will work for disabled people are measured. This nature of the assessment is vital to the success of an access audit. Important distinctions can be made, which a simple recording procedure cannot show. For instance, the difference between a Disabled Toilet and an Accessible Toilet lies in their layout and their ability to be used. Pure recording of the facilities will probably result in a tick for the presence of a disabled toilet, if there is a toilet with the wheelchair user symbol on the door. However, due to the poor design and layout of many of these toilets facilities, many would fail the assessment as being an Accessible Toilet because they are unusable by disabled people.

The simple recording process is unlikely to point out areas in which the facilities can be improved, other than the complete lack of facilities. The assessment of the *working* of the building can generate sensitive suggestions for improvement, where the improvement can be made by the ‘fine tuning’ of the building.

A description of a facility which does or does not work for disabled people will highlight the difficulties. It should also refer to the solutions required to improve the situation.

## **Feasibility’s studies**

Feasibility studies take the information from the access audit and use the data to propose detailed architectural changes which will improve the access area noted in the audit document.

## **Assessment criteria**

Second only to the decision to measure the working of the building is the choice of a commonly accepted criterion for measurement of the building. The reason that acknowledgement of the presence of a toilet marked with a disability symbol is not sufficient is that not all toilets are built to the same standard.

## **Who are disabled people?**

The audits targeted group of user must be clarified at the outset. The majority of access audits carried out appear to concentrate on wheel chair use, yet this group represents only 4 per cent of the disabled population. The other 96 percent are people with mobility difficulties, sensory difficulties (such as visual disability and deafness) and learning disabilities. Most disabled people cannot be placed neatly into categories. The nature of disability is that the majority of disabled people have multiple disabilities, with the largest groups of disabled people being in the population aged over 55 years. At current estimates this group of people are 17 percent of the population, a figure which will rise to 19 percent by the year 2025.

The target group to assess therefore ranges from wheelchair users to those who may have reduced vision and who exhibit a degree of mental confusion.

## **Standards and specifications**

With the definition of the disabled population it is important to clarify the areas of the building that will be assessed and the criteria for assessment. It is clear that the current legislative and standards documents are not comprehensive enough. Both Part M of the Building Regulations (1991) and BS 5810 are heavily biased towards the needs of wheelchair users, hardly considering sensory disabilities, and paying no reference to people with learning difficulties.

Figure 3.1 : Types of access audits available

The other difficulty with using documents such as Part M and BS 5819 is that they are description of minimum acceptable specifications which may allow use by disabled people (in wheelchairs). The standards make no reference to the ease of use of the facilities, not the selection and use of the fixtures and fittings required to use them.

## What to assess

### Attitudes

Not surprisingly, the attitudes of a building management, front-line staff and management may have more impact on disabled people using a building than the physical aspects of the building. A building that is completely accessible but staffed by people who are not welcoming, helpful and understanding of the issues around disability is likely not to be frequented by disabled people.

Assessing attitudes of the people operating a building is notoriously difficult to do. It is easier and fairly indicative to carry out a *Training Audit* to assess the level of disability equality training, customer care and any other specialist training that the staff may have had.

### Publicity / printed material

The design of publicity and marketing information such as leaflets and posters must be sensitive and appropriate to the target market. Use of language, images and media must be accessible, including literature particularly aimed at young people with learning difficulties. It should also be noted that there is a requirement for the production of publicity in formats that include large print, tape and Braille.

### Content

Content of publicity material in terms of language, images and portrayals can be assessed for their impact and appropriateness to groups of disabled people.

### Layout

The layout and typographic elements contained in the publicity material determine its accessibility to people with visual and cognitive disabilities. Requirements do not necessarily prevent designers from production exciting and satisfying products.

### Physical aspects

The physical aspects of a building form the core of an access audit. Areas which should typically be covered include:

#### *Physical access*

- \* **Transport, parking, entrances, entrance matting, ramps (design, platforms, handrails, gradients and lighting)**
- \* Doors – automatic (operation control, safety devices, operation procedure) and manual (closing forces, clear opening widths, vision panel and door furniture)
- \* Lighting – levels, location, glare and location of control switches.

- \* Short-rise lift platforms – location, size, operation, buttons and alarms
- \* Wheelchair stair lifts – location, type, controls and size
- \* Lifts – size, voice enunciation feedback, buttons, lighting and alarm telephones
- \* Floor finishes (carpet pile, colours, non-slip and visibility)
- \* Stairs – nosings, handrails, finishes and light levels
- \* Reception desks / box office desks
- \* Acoustics and acoustic treatment of spaces

### ***Decoration***

- \* Colours of wall, floor, ceiling and other features
- \* Contrasts and visual mapping
- \* Use of colour to distinguish and code areas

### ***Fire escape / evacuation***

- \* Training, escape / evacuation lifts, design of places of refuge (BS 5588 Part 8, to allow access to floors other than the ground floor) and their use, evacuation procedures, evacuation routes, ‘Evac’ chairs, fire alarms (visual, tactile and auditory), fire extinguishers, automatic building protection
- \* The design, location and lighting of signs
- \* Visual fire alarm warning
- \* Alarm procedures and alarm / emergency response cards

### ***Sanitary facilities***

- \* Toilets – location, size, alarms (and alarm procedures), fittings (colours, types, location and maintenance), taps/sinks, water temperatures, doors (size, door furniture, signage and automation), sanitary disposal and light levels
- \* Showers – size, types, fittings, layout, floor surface, temperature, pressure and lighting
- \* Changing areas – location, facilities, floor surfaces and light levels

### ***Wayfinding***

- \* Directional signage – size, typefaces, raised lettering, heights, colours, textual and graphic, location, layout, arrows and light levels
- \* Maps and guides – tactile and taped
- \* Door / floor signs and other markings (warning)

### ***Communications equipments***

- \* Telephones – minicom systems, inductive couplers, alarm systems and induction loops
- \* Computers – information technology to assist disabled people, such as text magnification for people with a visual disability
- \* Tannoy and paging system
- \* Front of house – induction loops on box office and meeting rooms
- \* Alarms and alarm procedures

### ***Refreshment / recreational facilities***

- \* Restaurants, bars, tea bars, rest rooms, kitchen and vending areas (machines, etc.) (these are assessed under similar areas to the physical access section)
- \* Shops and shopping areas – size, layout cash desk, price list and labels

### ***Health and safety***

- \* Signs, first-aid rooms (rest room), first-aid kits and training

How to report

The report format of an access audit is crucial to the success of the proposed outcome. These were illustrated earlier in Figure 3.1

It is important to locate the team supervising the audit in a department of the company, council or authority who have an understanding of the issues involved in the audit and, more importantly, of the implementation of change. It will be this group that takes the information that has been collected in the auditing procedure and develops it into an implementation plan.

## **Conclusion**

It is important to have a clear idea of what is being assessed and the purpose of the assessment before any work begins. The purpose of the assessment will determine the areas that are to be assessed, the reporting format and the composition of the report's targets.

There are many consultants who can advise and carry out surveys of this nature or support internal groups undertaking their own surveys. The role of disabled people in the design of assessments and carrying them out cannot be overstressed.

**APPENDIX – v**

**INTERNATIONAL TOURIST ARRIVALS**

**WORLDWIDE AND BY REGIONS**

**1991-2000\***

**(Arrivals in Millions)**

<b>Region</b>	<b>1991</b>	<b>1992</b>	<b>1993</b>	<b>1994</b>	<b>1995</b>	<b>1996</b>	<b>1997</b>	<b>1998</b>	<b>1999</b>	<b>2000*</b>
<b>WORLD</b>										
Arrivals	462.7	500.9	515.7	550.3	550.3	597.4	618.2	626.5	650.4	698.8
%Change	--	8.3	3.0	6.7	0.0	8.6	3.5	1.3	3.8	7.4
<b>AFRICA</b>										
Arrivals	16.2	18.0	18.5	18.9	20.1	21.8	23.2	24.9	26.5	27.6
%Change	--	11.1	2.8	2.2	6.3	8.5	6.4	7.3	6.4	4.2
<b>AMERICAS</b>										
Arrivals	95.5	102.3	102.1	104.8	108.9	115.2	116.6	119.5	122.2	129.0
%Change	--	7.1	-0.2	2.6	3.9	5.7	1.3	2.5	2.3	5.5
<b>EAST ASIA / PACIFIC</b>										
Arrivals	56.4	64.2	71.2	76.8	81.4	89.0	88.3	88.0	97.6	111.9
%Change	--	13.8	10.9	7.9	6.0	9.3	- 0.8	- 0.3	10.9	14.7
<b>EUROPE</b>										
Arrivals	282.9	302.3	309.9	334.8	323.4	353.7	371.1	373.7	380.2	403.3
%Change	--	6.9	2.5	2.5	3.4	9.4	4.9	0.7	1.7	6.1
<b>MIDDLE EAST</b>										
Arrivals	8.4	10.5	10.5	11.1	12.4	13.3	14.3	15.1	18.2	20.6
%Change	--	25.0	0.0	5.7	11.7	7.3	7.5	5.6	20.5	13.2
<b>SOUTH ASIA</b>										
Arrivals	3.3	3.6	3.5	3.9	4.2	4.4	4.8	5.2	5.8	6.4
%Change	--	9.1	- 2.8	11.4	7.7	4.8	9.1	8.3	11.3	10.3
<b>SHARE OF INDIA (in the world tourist arrivals)</b>	0.36	0.37	0.34	0.34	0.39	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38	0.38

\* Provisional

SOURCE : World Tourism Organisation.

**APPENDIX – w**

**INTERNATIONAL TOURIST RECEIPTS BY REGIONS  
(BILLION US \$)**

	1991	1992	1993	1994	1995	1996	1997	1998	1999	2000 *
<b>WORLD</b>										
Receipts	276.	315.	321.	354.0	406.	436.	439.	442.	455.	475.8
% Annual Change	9	4	9	9	2	5	7	5	4	4.5
	--	13.9	2.1	10.3	14.5	7.5	0.7	0.6	2.9	
<b>AFRICA</b>										
Receipts	5.0	6.8	6.8	7.5	8.1	9.2	9.4	9.9	10.3	10.7
% Annual Change	--	36.0	0.0	10.3	13.6	13.6	2.2	5.3	4.0	3.9
<b>AMERICAS</b>										
Receipts	76.7	83.8	89.1	93.2	99.7	110.	116.	117.	122.	136.4
% Annual Change	--	9.3	6.3	4.6	7.0	10.9	5.7	0.3	4.4	11.4
<b>EAST ASIA / PACIFIC</b>										
Receipts	40.4	47.9	53.9	63.8	74.5	82.3	75.7	70.7	75.2	82.5
% Annual Change	---	18.6	12.5	18.4	16.8	10.5	- 8.0	- 6.6	6.4	9.7
<b>EUROPE</b>										
Receipts	148.	169.	163.	181.8	212.	222.	224.	231.	233.	231.5
% Annual Change	5	1	8	10.5	8	2	5	7	1	0.7
	----	13.9	- 3.1		17.6	4.4	1.0	3.2	0.6	
<b>MIDDLE EAST</b>										
Receipts	3.8	5.1	5.7	6.4	7.6	8.2	9.2	8.8	9.8	9.7
% Annual Change	---	34.2	11.8	12.3	18.8	7.9	12.2	- 4.3	11.4	- 1.1
<b>SOUTH ASIA</b>										
Receipts	2.3	2.8	2.7	3.1	3.5	3.8	4.0	4.3	4.6	5.1
% Annual Change	---	21.7	- 3.6	14.8	12.9	8.6	5.3	7.5	7.0	10.9
<b>SHARE OF INDIA</b> (in the world tourist receipts)	0.67	0.67	0.66	0.66	0.64	0.65	0.66	0.67	0.66	0.67

\* Provisional

SOURCE : World Tourism Organisation.

**APPENDIX – x**

**REGION WISE TOURIST ARRIVALS IN INDIA – 1998 TO 2000**

State / U.T.	1998		1999		2000		Prop. To the Total (%)	
	Domestic	Foreign	Domestic	Foreign	Domestic	Foreign	Domestic	Foreign
<b>Northern Region</b> Jammu & Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Delhi, Chandigarh								
<b>Total</b>	53209461	2068655	57544888	2185037	63122040	2279383	30.0	37.6
<b>Souther Region</b> Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamilnadu, Pondicherry, Kerala, Lakshdweep, Andman & Nicobar								
<b>Total</b>	75814874	1179194	84612529	1270304	94601776	1313562	45.0	21.6
<b>Eastern Region</b> Bihar, Orissa, Sikkim, W. Bengal								
<b>Total</b>	15694536	314609	16462734	309412	17594801	310638	8.4	5.1
<b>Central &amp; Western Region</b> Maharashtra, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Daman & Diu, Goa								
<b>Total</b>	22947345	1974337	3148379	2063782	33305811	2153438	15.9	35.5

North East Region Assam, Meghalaya, Manipur, Mizoram, Tripura, Nagaland, Arunachal Pradesh								
<b>Total</b>	529784	2909	567284	3570	1489112	11788	0.7	0.2
<b>G. Total</b>	168196000	5539704	190671014	5832105	210113540	6068809	100.0	100.0

**APPENDIX – y**  
**DISTRIBUTION OF APPROVED HOTELS AND ROOMS IN NORTHEAST INDIA**

S. No. State / Place	5*D	5*	4*	3*	2*	1*	Heritage	Unclassified	Total
<b>Arunachal Pradesh</b>									
Itanagar	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	1	1
	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	10	10
Total (No. of Hotels)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
(No. of Rooms)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	10	10
<b>Assam</b>									
Dibru Garh	--	--	--	--	1	--	--	--	1
	--	--	--	--	38	--	--	--	38
Guwahati	--	--	2	3	2	--	--	1	8
	--	--	154	160	54	--	--	53	421
Jorhat	--	--	--	--	1	--	--	--	1
	--	--	--	--	31	--	--	--	31
Kaziranga	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	1	1
	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	18	18
Sibsagar	--	--	--	--	1	--	--	--	1
	--	--	--	--	29	--	--	--	29
Silehar	--	--	--	--	1	--	--	--	1
	--	--	--	--	44	--	--	--	44
Tinsukia	--	--	--	1	1	--	--	--	2
	--	--	--	38	20	--	--	--	58
Total (No. of Hotels)	0	0	2	4	7	0	0	2	15
(No. of Rooms)	0	0	154	198	216	0	0	71	639
<b>Manipur</b>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Meghalaya</b>									
Shillong	--	--	1	2	--	1	--	--	4
	--	--	50	75	--	40	--	--	165
Total (No. of Hotels)	0	0	1	2	--	1	0	0	4
(No. of Rooms)	0	0	50	75	--	40	0	0	165
<b>Mizoram</b>									
Aizawl	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	1	1
	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	28	28
Total (No. of Hotels)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1
(No. of Rooms)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	28	28
<b>Nagaland</b>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
<b>Sikkim</b>									
Gangtok	--	--	3	1	--	--	--	--	4
	--	--	104	29	--	--	--	--	133
Total (No. of Hotels)	0	0	3	1	0	0	0	0	4
(No. of Rooms)	0	0	104	29	0	0	0	0	133

## APPENDIX – z

### SOURCES OF INFORMATION

The major sources of information, which influenced the tourists to visit India, were friends and relatives, general books, travel agents / tour operators, travel guides etc.

S. No.	Country of Nationality	No. of Tourists Reporting Different Sources of Information									
		Tele-ision	Adv. Daily/Magazine	Advt. Travel Journal	Travel Shows Exhib.	Travel Guides	General Books	Friends and Relatives	Travel agents/ Tour Oper.	India Office	Others
1	Australia	1	7	5	8	11	11	14	11	4	32
2	Canada	4	2	6	3	6	6	13	5	3	12
3	Germany	9	12	16	7	22	29	20	8	6	48
4	France	8	11	5	5	22	18	20	14	3	25
5	Italy	5	4	5	4	9	14	18	10	8	21
6	Japan	2	3	2	2	13	10	15	7	2	22
7	Malaysia	1	0	1	4	2	1	2	0	0	3
8	Netherlands	5	4	5	2	9	14	17	3	1	16
9	Oman	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	2	0	1
10	Singapore	3	4	0	1	0	3	4	0	1	8
11	Spain	1	2	3	2	7	6	9	4	3	6
12	Sweden	0	2	5	2	8	3	4	8	0	10
13	Switzerland	3	3	3	2	7	11	13	11	2	3
14	Thailand	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	1
15	UAE	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	0	0	0
16	U.K.	38	56	78	63	134	116	147	160	35	151
17	U.S.A.	12	22	17	12	42	51	67	33	9	88
18	Others	23	30	19	23	44	71	79	33	13	106
<b>Total</b>		<b>115</b>	<b>162</b>	<b>170</b>	<b>141</b>	<b>336</b>	<b>365</b>	<b>445</b>	<b>309</b>	<b>90</b>	<b>553</b>

## **APPENDIX - aa**

### **THE NATIONAL WILDLIFE ACTION PLAN ON TOURISM**

The National Wildlife Action Plan makes the following points on the issue of Tourism:

1. Tourism demands must be subservient to and in consonance with the conservation interests of Protected Areas (PA) and wildlife
2. Eco-tourism must primarily involve and benefit local communities
3. Develop national guidelines on tourism within PAs. Ways of benefiting local people directly by tourism should be specified in the guidelines
4. Develop tourism management plans for each PA. Also conduct surveys of existing accommodation and tourist facilities within PAs
5. The Wildlife Institute of India should develop impact assessment techniques and standards that can be used by PA managers to evaluate the negative impacts of tourism on soil, water resources, vegetation, animal life, sanitation or waste disposal and cultural environments
6. Develop stringent standards of waste disposal, energy and water consumption and construction plans and materials used therein
7. A ceiling of the number of tourists and tourist vehicles permitted to enter the PA should be specified. The PA managers must be empowered to use their discretion in closing off certain areas of the PA, for example, an area where a tiger has littered
8. Set up State and Union Territory eco-tourism advisory boards that will regulate tourism activities. Representatives of local people living near PAs, local NGOs and PA managers to be a part of these boards to develop and regulate tourism activities

## **APPENDIX – bb**

### **LIST OF CENTRAL GOVERNMENT MINISTRIES FOR TOURISM DEVELOPMENT COLLABORATION**

Ministry of Agriculture- Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), Indian Institute of Horticultural Research (IIHR), Krishi Vigyan Kendra (KVK), Water Technology Centre for Eastern Region

Ministry of Commerce & Industries- Agricultural & Processed Food Products Exports Development Authority (APEDA), Industrial Institute of Foreign Trade (IIFT), India Trade Promotion Organisation (ITPO)

Ministry of Communication & Information Technology- National Information Centre (NIC), Department of Tele Communication (DOT)

Ministry of Defence- Defence Research & Development Organisation (DRDO), GREF

Ministry of Environment & Forests- Central Zoo Authority (CZI), Botanical Survey of India (BSI), Zoological Survey of India (ZSI), Medicinal Plant Board, Forest Development Agencies (Joint Forest Management Committees & Eco-development Committees)

Ministry of Health & Family Welfare- Department of Indian Systems of Medicine & Homeopathy

Ministry of Home Affairs- Northeast Council (NEC)

Ministry of Human Resource Development- Department of Education, Department of Women & Child Development

Ministry of Information & Broadcasting

Ministry of Non-conventional Energy Sources- Indian Renewable Energy Development Agency Ltd. (IREDA)

Ministry of Road Transport & Highway

Ministry of Rural Development- Council of Advancement of People's Action & Rural Technology (CAPART), National Institute of Rural Development (NIRD)

Ministry of Science & Technology- Department of Science and Industrial Research, Institute of Himalayan Bio-resources Technology (IHBT)

Ministry of Small Scale Industries & Agro & Rural Industries

Ministry of Textiles- Handloom Export Promotion Council (HEPC), Handicraft & Handloom Export Corporation (HHEC)

Ministry of Tourism & Culture- Archaeological Survey of India, National Culture Fund, Department of Tourism

Ministry of Tribal Affairs

Ministry of Water Resources

Ministry of Youth Affairs & Sports

## **APPENDIX – cc**

### **LIST OF INSTITUTIONAL FUNDING AGENCIES FOR TOURISM DEVELOPMENT**

#### **Indian Non-governmental Organisations (NGOs):**

Infosys Foundation  
Pirojsha Godrej foundation  
Reliance Foundation  
J.R.D. Tata Trust  
Tata Sons Ltd. & various Trusts  
Wildlife Trust of India  
K. Mahindra Foundation

#### **International Non-Governmental Organisations (NGOs):**

Aga Khan Foundation  
Asia Pacific Foundation of Canada  
Asian Cultural Council  
AT & T Foundation  
Aurora Foundation  
Environmental Trust  
Ford Foundation  
Foundation for Deep Ecology  
Gates Foundation  
Global Conservation Fund (Gordon & Betty Moore Foundation)  
Goldman Environment Foundation  
International Fund for Animal Welfare  
Kellogg Foundation  
MacArther Foundation  
National Geographic Foundation  
Paul Getty Allen Forest Protection Foundation  
Paul Getty Trust  
Smithsonian Institute  
The Asia Foundation  
The Carnegie Foundation  
The Rockefeller Foundation  
World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF), International

### **International Government Agencies:**

Department of Environmental Research & Social Sciences, Germany  
German Ministry of Development Co-operation  
National Environment Research Council (NERC), UK  
Netherlands Development Organisation  
Netherlands Organisation for Scientific Research (Earth & Life Science)  
Swiss National Foundation, Switzerland  
The Research Council of Norway (Environment & Development)  
The Swedish Research Council for Environment, Agriculture & Spatial Planning, Sweden  
The United States Agency for International Development (USAID)  
United Kingdom Department of International Development  
United States Department of Fish & Wildlife  
US Global Change Research Programme, USA

### **Inter Governmental Organisations (IGOs):**

Conservation International  
Danish International Development Assistance (DANIDA)  
Department for International Development (DFID), UK  
Environment Programme of European Commission  
Environment Protection Agency, USA  
Global Environment Facility (GEF)  
India Canada Environment Facility (ICEF)  
Indo-Dutch Programme on Alternatives in Development (IDPAD)  
Indo-Norwegian Environment Programme (INEP)  
International Bank for Reconstruction & Development (IBRD)  
International Relations Council (Social Science & Humanities Research), Canada  
International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN)  
Japanese Bank for International Co-operation (JBIC)  
National Natural Science Foundation of China  
Overseas Development Administration (ODA)  
The Canadian International Development Agency (CIDA)  
The United Nations Children's Fund (UNCF)  
The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)  
The United Nations Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)  
The United Nations Education, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)  
The United Nations Environment Programme (UNEP)  
The United Nations Population Fund (UNFPA)

## REFERENCES:

- Agarwal A. K. et al, 1991, *Political & Economic Development of Mizoram*, Mittal Publications
- Aier Y., 1973, *Folk Tales of Nagaland*
- Aier Y., 1973, *The Nagaland of tomorrow and Her educated youth*
- Ao M. A., 1968, *The Arts & Crafts of Nagaland*, Naga Institute of Culture
- Ao M. A., 1970, *A Brief Historical Account of Nagaland*, Naga Institute of Culture
- Barthel W. B., 1994, *A Perspective Plan for Conservation, Management and Development of Land Resources for 2000 A.D.*, Ministry of Agriculture
- Bhatia A. K., 2002, *Tourism Development – Principles & Practices*, Sterling Publishers, New Delhi
- Bhatia A. K., 2001, *International Tourism Management*, Sterling Publishers, New Delhi
- Bhattacharjee P. K., 2001, *Provisional Population Totals-Paper 1 & 2*, Controller of Publications, New Delhi
- Bhattacharya S., 1992, *From Jhumming to Tapping*, Dept. of Welfare for Sch. Tribes, Tripura
- Carson L. H., 1927, *Pioneer Trails, Trials and Triumphs*, Reprinted (1997) by Dept. of Art & Culture, Mizoram
- Cater & Lowman, 1994, *Ecotourism-A Sustainable Option?*, John Wiley & Sons, UK
- Central Young Mizo Assn., 1994, *Constitution of Y. M. A.*, Aizawl, Mizoram
- Chatterji N., 1979, *Monoliths & Landmarks of Mizoram*, Tribal Research Institute, Aizawl
- Das J. N., 1986, *Study of the Land Systems of the Northeastern Region*, Law Research Institute
- Das P., 1997, *Wild Edible Plants of Tripura Tribes*, Tribal Cultural Research Institute & Museum, Tripura
- Dev Varman S. B. K., 1971, *A Study over the Jhum and Jhumia rehabilitation in Tripura* Dept. of Welfare of Sch. Tribes and Sch. Castes, Govt. of Tripura
- Dev Varman S. B. K., 1986, *The Tribes of Tripura*, Directorate of Research, Tripura
- Debbarma K., 1994, *Tribal Folk Medicine of Tripura*, Tribal Research Institute, Tripura
- Dept. of Agriculture, Mizoram, 1999, *Agriculture Handbook of Mizoram*, Govt. of Mizoram
- Dept. of Agriculture & Minor Irrigation, Mizoram, 2001, *Statistical Abstract*, Directorate of Agriculture and Minor Irrigation
- Dept. of Art & Culture, 2000, *Various brochures*, Govt. of Mizoram
- Dept. of Environment & Forests, Mizoram, 2001, *Handbook cum diary*, Linkman Publications, West Bengal
- Dept. of Environment of Forests, Mizoram, 2000, *Wildlife Series- brochures*, Wildlife Division, Mizoram
- Dept. of Tourism, GOI, 2001, *National Tourism Policy – 2002*, Ministry of Tourism & Culture
- Dept. of Tourism, GOI, 2002, *Annual Report, 2001 – 2002*, Ministry of Tourism & Culture
- Dept. of Tourism, GOI, 2001, *Tourist Statistics – 2000*, Ministry of Tourism & Culture

- Dept. of Tourism, GOI, 2002, *Tourist Arrivals in India, Highlights – 2001*, Ministry of Tourism & Culture
- Dept. of Tourism, Nagaland, 2001, *Tourism Policy – 2001*, Govt. of Nagaland
- Director of Art & Culture, 1989, *Mizoram District Gazetteers*, Govt. of Mizoram
- Director General, MOT, 1998, *Ecotourism in India, Policy & Guidelines*, Ministry of Tourism, GOI
- Directorate of Animal Husbandry, Mizoram, 1997, *Report on 16<sup>th</sup> Quinquennial Livestock Census of Mizoram*, Govt. of Mizoram
- Directorate of Economics & Statistics, 2000, *Census of Government Employees*, Govt. of Mizoram
- Directorate of Horticulture, Mizoram, 2001, *Horticulture of Mizoram at a Glance*, Govt. of Mizoram
- Elwin V., 1959, *The Art of the Northeast Frontier of India*
- Elwin V., 1969, *The Nagas in the Nineteenth Century*, OUP
- Epao V., 1991, *From Naga animism to Christianity*
- Faulkner et al, 2001, *Tourism in the Twenty-first Century*, Continuum, London
- Fischer C E C, 1978, *The flora of the Lushai Hills*, Tribal Research Institute
- Ganguli M., 1984, *A Pilgrimage to the Nagaland*, Oxford & IBH Publishing Co.
- Gokhale A M et al, 1985, *The Use of Alder Tees*, Education Dept., Nagaland
- Govt. of Mizoram, 1988-, *Administration Reports (1987 - 88, 1988 – 89)*
- Govt. of Mizoram, 1989, *Mizoram District Gazetteers*, Dept. of Art & Culture
- Govt. of Mizoram, 2001, *Mizoram Information Booklet*, Dept. of Information & Public Relations, Mizoram
- Govt. of Mizoram, 2001, *Report of Integrated sample survey for estimation of Production of Milk, Egg and Meat for the year 2000-2001*, Directorate of Animal Husbandry & Veterinary, Mizoram
- Govt. of Nagaland, 19 , *Nagaland District Gazetteers*
- Govt. of Tripura, 1975, *Tripura District Gazetteers*, Dept. of Education, Tripura
- Govt. of Tripura, 1992- *TUI, Journal on Tribal Life & Culture*, Tribal Research Institute
- Guha Thakurta S. N., 1999, *India – The Land & People – Tripura*, National Book Trust
- Holden A., 2000, *Environment and Tourism*, Routledge, London
- Inst. of Highways & Transportation, 1999, *Guidelines for Planning for Public Transport in Development*, HQ Design & Print, England
- Iralu K. D., 2001, *How then shall we live?*, Iralu, Kohima
- James Holmes-Siedle, 1996, *Barrier-free Design, A manual for designers & Managers*, Butterworth Architecture, Oxford
- Jamir A. M. T., 2002, *General knowledge – Naga Hills to Nagaland*, Jamir, Kohima
- Horam R., 1998, *The Genesis of the Naga Political Movement*, Mrs. Horam, Manipur
- Khutsoh W., 2000, *Tourism scenario and its potentiality in Nagaland*, Khutosh, Guwahati, Assam
- Laiba M. T., 1992, *The Geography of Manipur*, Public Book Store, Imphal, Manipur
- Lalchualova, 2001, *Aizawl Guide Book*, Tribal Research Institute, Mizoram
- Lalchungnunga, 1994, *Mizoram: Politics of Regionalism & National Integration*, Reliance Publishing House
- Luikham R., 1983, *Folk Lore & Tales of the Nagas*, Emmanuel Publishers, New Delhi
- Long J., 1850, *Analysis of the Rajmala*, Tribal Cultural Research Inst. & Museum, Tripura

- Lorrain R., 1912, *Five Years in Unknown Jungles*, Lakher Pioneer Mission, London,  
Reprint (1988) by Tribal Research Institute, Mizoram
- MoEF, GOI, 1994, *Handbook of Environmental Procedures & Guidelines*, ENVIS
- Nagaland Board of School Education, 2001, *Nagaland (Text book for classes 9 & 10)*
- Nath N. C., 1999, *Sri Rajmala, Vol I – IV (Translation)*, Tribal Research Institute,  
Tripura
- North Eastern Council, 2002, *Statistics of North Eastern Region*, NEC
- North Eastern Council, 1995-, *Journals of the North Eastern Council*, NEC
- Planning & Programme Implementation Dept., 2001, *Draft Tenth Five Year Plan  
(2002- 2007) & Annual Plan (2002-2003)*, Govt. of Mizoram
- Prakash Singh, 2001, *Kohima to Kashmir*, Rupa & Co., New Delhi
- Ramkrishnan P. S., 1992, *Shifting Agriculture & Sustainable Development – An  
Interdisciplinary Study from Northeastern India*, UNESCO
- Saigal J. R., 2000, *Pakistan Splits – The Birth of Bangladesh*, Manas Publications
- Sangkima, 1992, *Mizos: Society & Social Change*, Spectrum Publications
- Sapunchangkija et al, 1992, *Orchids of Nagaland*, Forest Department, Nagaland
- Sen S., 19 , *Tribes of Nagaland*
- Seth P. N. et al, 2000, *An Introduction to Travel & Tourism*, Sterling Publishers, New  
Delhi
- Singh D., 1996, *The last frontier – People and forests in Mizoram*, TERI
- Singh K. S. et al, 1994, *People of India – National Series*, Anthropological Survey of  
India (ASI)
- Singh K. S. et al, 1994, *People of India – State Series*, Nagaland, ASI
- Singh K. S. et al, 1995, *People of India – State Series*, Mizoram, ASI
- Singh K. S. et al, 1996, *People of India – State Series*, Tripura, ASI
- Singh L. I., 1987, *Introduction to Manipur*, Singh I. S., Imphal, Manipur
- Singh P., 1995, *India – The Land & People – Nagaland*, National Book Trust
- Tribal Research Institute, 1993, *Guide to Mizoram, Part I-IV*, Dept. of Art & Culture
- Tyagi D. K., 1997, *Tribal Folk Tales of Tripura*, Tripura State Tribal Cultural  
Research Institute & Museum
- Thansanga R. et al, 1999, *Soils of Mizoram*, Directorate of Agriculture, Mizoram
- Telem I. K., 2002, *General Knowledge of Manipur*, Telem S., Imphal, Manipur
- Tom Turner, 1998, *Landscape Planning & Environmental Impact Design*, UCL Press,  
London
- Upadhyaya K. K., 1986, *Development Problems & Prospects of Mizoram*, Inter India
- Vidyarthi L. P., 1993, *Art & Culture of Northeast India*, Ministry of Information &  
Broadcasting, Govt. of India
- Young G., 2001, *Indo – Naga war – A journalist account (1961)*, Gase Publications,  
Viphuora